
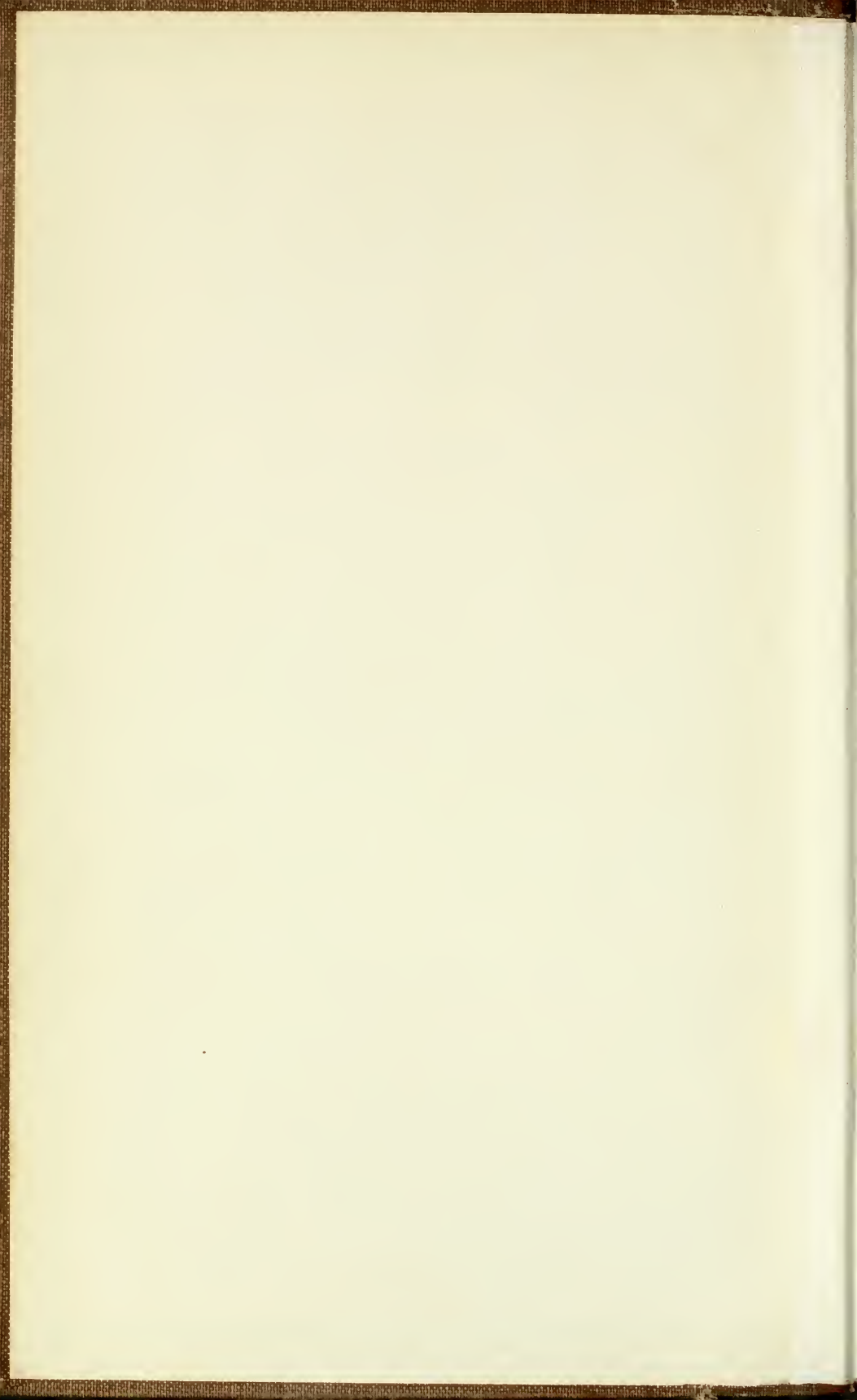


The Prose Life of Alexander

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO DUPL

3 1761 00361316 3



PR
1119
A2
no.143



The Prose Life of Alexander.

(THORNTON MS.)

EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY.

Original Series, 143.

1913 (*for* 1911).

PRICE 10s.

OXFORD: HORACE HART
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

Original Series
No. 143.



The Prose Life of Alexander.

FROM THE THORNTON MS.

EDITED BY

J. S. WESTLAKE, M.A.

THE TEXT.

*

131830
6 3 14

LONDON :

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY

BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.,

68-74 CARTER LANE, E.C.

AND BY HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS,

AMEN CORNER, E.C.

—
1913 (*for* 1911)

PR

1119

AZ

no 143

PREFATORY NOTE

THE delay in issuing this important prose romance has been due to the prolonged illness of its editor, Mr. J. S. Westlake. Even now Mr. Westlake has not been able to attend to the revision and publication of the book. The collation with the manuscript has been made for the Society by Miss E. M. Thompson, the proofs have been read over by Mr. John Munro, and a few changes have been made in the side-notes, foot-notes and head-lines, which otherwise remain as Mr. Westlake left them. The translations from the Latin text which make good the lacunae in the manuscript have also been inserted by Mr. Westlake.

The Introduction, together with the Notes and Glossary, are reserved for a future volume. Mr. Westlake's elaborate side-notes provide, meanwhile, a useful epitome of the story.

The Society is greatly indebted to the Dean and Chapter of Lincoln for depositing the manuscript in the British Museum, and to the Keeper of the Manuscripts, Mr. J. P. Gilson, for receiving it there.

I. G.

THE PROSE LIFE OF ALEXANDER.

LIFE OF ALEXANDER

THE most learned Egyptians who know of the size of the earth, the waves of the sea, and the order of the heavens (betokening the way of the stars and the turning of the 4 skies), have bequeathed these things to the whole world through the highness and the wisdom of magic knowledge. And they tell of a king of that land, by name Anectanabus, great in understanding, and full of love in astrology and mathematics. Now, 8 upon a day it happened that a messenger came, and said unto him that Artaxerxes, king of the Persians, was drawing nigh towards him with a very great force of foes. Yet he did not call out his army, nor get ready his advance. Instead of this, 12 he hurried into his bed-chambers in his palace, and, taking down a brazen shell, which was full of rain-water, and holding in his hand a brazen rod, sought by magic spells to summon the devils. By which wizardry he felt, in the shell itself, the fleets 16 sailing over him amid fearful affray.

Of the Wisdom of the Egyptians and of their king Anectanabus.

How Anectanabus saw by wizardry the oncoming of the Persian hosts.

Now there were lords of Anectanabus set in sway over his armies to guard the Persian border.

And one hapless man coming to him, besought him: 'O 20 most mighty King Anectanabus, there ariseth against thee Artaxerxes, the king of the Persians, with an untold horde of foes and strange races. For they are Parthians, Medes, Persians, Syrians, Mesopotamians, Brapes, Phares, Argiri, Chaldaeans, 24 Bachiri, Confres, Hircanians, and Agiophii, and many other folks coming from Eastern lands.' On hearing this, Anectanabus said, sighing: 'The trust that I gave to thee, heed thou right well; yet thy prowess hath not been the prowess of a doughty 28 man, but the doings of a cowardly fellow. For worth showeth itself, not in the greatness of the folk, but in the steadfastness of their souls. Dost thou not know one lion putteth many

A lord of the Marshes tells him of the advancing myriads of foes and is chidden for his cowardice.

2 *Anectanabus's flight from the Persians. He greets Olympias.*

The king sees his further ill-luck by wizardry.

does to flight?' And having said these words, he went into his chamber alone, and made brazen shells, and filled them with rain-water, and held in his hand a palm rod, and gazing into this, began, as hard as he could, to utter spells, and beheld how 4 the Egyptians were being smitten down at the onslaught of the Barbarians' ships.

He fleeth unto Ethiopia and from Macedonia to Macedonia and is there a soothsayer.

Forthwith he changed his dress, and shaved his head and beard, and took gold as much as he might bear, and which might 8 be needful to him to busy himself with wizardry. And thus he fled from Egypt, near by Pelusium. And at length, coming into Ethiopia, he put on linen apparel, [and] in the guise of an Egyptian seer went into Macedonia. And there he sate 12 himself, and before all the Greeks, and in their sight was soothing. But the Egyptians, when they saw how Anectanabus was not at Court, went to Serapis, who was their greatest god, and besought him that he might give them answer as to 16 Anectanabus their king. And Serapis replied: 'Anectanabus, your king, is gone from Egypt because of Artaxerxes, the king of the Persians, who will subdue you unto his lordship. Nevertheless, when a short time hath flown by, he will come back 20 to shake off his thralldom, and will be avenged on your foes, and yoke them under you.' And as soon as they had got this answer, they made a kingly statue out of a black stone, in honour of Anectanabus. And they wrote on it, at his feet, this 24 saying, that it might be handed down for their offspring to think of. But Anectanabus remained in Macedonia, nor was he known.

The Egyptians learning his absence get an oracle why he is gone and when he shall come back again victorious. They make of him a black stone image.

HOW ANECTANABUS WENT UP TO THE PALACE TO
OLYMPIA THE QUEEN.

Philip, king of Macedon, being gone to battle, Anectanabus meeting Olympias greets her and is answered.

In the meantime, Philip, king of Macedonia, went out to 28 battle. But Anectanabus went forward to the palace, that he might behold Olympias the queen, and see how fair she was. And when he saw her, his heart was smitten with love of her, and stretching forth his hand, he greeted her, saying, 32 'Hail, Queen of Macedonia,' disdaining to call her 'lady'. And she, Olympias, answered him, speaking thus: 'Hail, master, come thou and sit near.' And when he sate thus, Olympias

asked many things of him. 'Art thou not an Egyptian?'
And Anectanabus answered: 'The word thou saidst was kingly,
when thou didst name the Egyptians. For the Egyptians are
4 wise, and read dreams, understand the birds of the air in their
flight, open up the hidden places, and tell the fate of those new-
born, babes. Of all these things, as a seer, I, too, have knowledge.'
And Olympia saw how he gazed upon her, and spoke, 'Master, of
8 what dost thou bethink thee, who thus lookest on me?' And
Anectanabus answered, 'I call to my mind many answers of the
gods. One answer had been that I was to look upon a queen.'
And saying this, he drew forth from his breast a cleansing
12 tablet of bronze and ivory, inwrought with gold and silver, and
on its face were three whirls. The first contained in itself the
Twelve Minds, and in the third, sun and moon were fashioned.
Next to them, was seen a chain of ivory, and from it he
16 pulled forth seven wonder-bright stars, that told the hours
and birth-dooms of men, and seven carven stones, and two
stones for the saving men whole.

And Olympia beheld these things, and said: 'Master, if
20 thou wouldst I should believe thee, tell me the year, the day
and hour of the king's birth.' And upon this, he said to the
queen, 'Wishest thou to hear nothing else from me?' Quoth the
queen, 'Tell me what shall fall out betwixt Philip and me, for
24 men say that, when Philip shall come from the war, he will
thrust me forth, and take another mate.' And Anectanabus
answered: 'They prate of many things untruly; but ere a long
time pass, it shall be as they say.' And the queen answered:
28 'I beg thee, master, unveil me all the truth.' Thereupon
Anectanabus:—'One of the mightiest gods shall share thy bed
and uphold thee through all thy thrivings and downfalls, even
if they be overstrong.' Olympia replied: 'I beseech thee, say
32 what shape this god shall put on?' Anectanabus replied:
'Neither young, nor old; his beard besprinkled with white
hairs. Wherefore, if this please thee, be ready for him, for
at night shalt thou see him, and in thy sleep shall he lie by
36 thee.' The queen said: 'If I behold this, neither as a seer, nor
as godly, but, as the god himself, will I worship' [thee]. And
at once Anectanabus said, 'Fare thee well, O queen.' After
this Anectanabus, leaving the palace, and walking straight forth

And the queen hearing that he is an Egyptian asks him of many things.

He looks on her, and telling her of an oracle, shows the instruments of his sorcery.

Olympia asks as to the king's birth; and as to what shall befall her, for men foretell evil.

Anectanabus gainsays them and foretells that she shall be beloved and have the embraces of a god in man's shape.

Leaving her he digs up herbs that he may so delude her.

And having dreamt Olympia calls him to her, he tells her how to enable the god to come to her first seeming as a snake.

She gives him a chamber in the palace.

He lieth by the queen seemingly as a god and sealeth her womb, saying the child shall not be upbraided for his birth.

Thus was she cheated; and was with child.

But she, in fear, asks him how to escape Philip's wrath.

He comforts her and through wizardry makes King Philip dream a god is lying with his wife who, after, seals her womb,

to the city's camp in a desert spot, tore up herbs, and ground them, and took their juice, and wrought spells and other like things of the fiend, that in that same night Olympia might behold the god Hamon lying beside her, and saying to her 4 thereafter, 'Woman, thou hast conceived him who shall beshield thee.' And, on the morrow, Olympia awoke from her slumbers, and called Anectanabus to her, and told him of the dream she had beheld. Then Anectanabus said: 'If thou wilt give me 8 room in the palace, thou shalt see the god himself, face to face. For that god shall come to thee in the shape of a great snake, and soon after, taking on a manlike body, he shall seem to be in my likeness.' And to this Olympia said: 'As thou hast spoken, 12 master, do. Take to thyself a bed in the palace, and canst thou make good the truth thereof, I will deem thee to be the father of the boy.' And, about the first watch of the night, Anectanabus took on him, through spells and wizardry to be changed into 16 the shape of a great snake, and whistling on to the bedchamber of Olympia, to fly through. And he entered her room, and rose on to her bed, and with great love began to kiss her, and the kisses betokened to her who he was. And when he rose up 20 from the bed, he smote her on the womb, and spake: 'This begetting be thy avenging, and in no wise may it be upbraided of men.'

On such a fashion was Olympia cheated, who had lain with 24 a man as though he had been a god. And in the morning, Anectanabus went down from the palace, and the queen was with child.

And when she began to be big, she called unto her Anec- 28 tanabus, saying: 'Master, tell me, what doom will Philip wreak on me, when he shall come back?' And Anectanabus said to her, 'Be not afraid: god Hamon will champion thee.' And with these words he left the palace, and went outside the 32 town, to a barren spot. And, uprooting grasses, rubbed them, and grated them, and took their sap. And he caught a sea-bird, and began to sing over the herbs, and anoint the herbs with the sap. This he did in fellowship with the fiends, that he might 36 betray King Philip through a dream. And this was brought about. That same night the god Hamon appeared to Philip, in a dream, lying with his wife Olympia, and, the night ended, he

saw him touch her womb, and seal it with a golden ring. And on this ring there was a stone, and graven on this a lion's head, and the chariot of the sun, and a very sharp sword. And he
4 said to her: 'Woman, thou hast conceived thy saviour.' And Philip awoke from his sleep, and calling Arideus, made known to him the dream, and what he had seen. And Arideus said: 'Philip, not from man, but from a god, hath thy wife conceived.
8 In truth, the lion's head and the chariot of the sun and the sharp sword, foretold that he, who shall be born of her, shall journey to the East whence riseth the sun! And with the sharp sword shall he underyoke to himself the nations of the
12 whole world.'

telling her she has conceived her saviour.

And awaking from the dream his seer reads him its meaning, and that the child shall be glorious.

HOW ANECTANABUS IN THE SHAPE OF A MIGHTY DRAGON WENT TO THE FORE IN FRONT OF PHILIP AND OVERCAME HIS ENEMIES IN THE FRAY.

In the meanwhile, King Philip fought and won. For there appeared in the battle a dragon, who went before him and laid low his foes. And when he came back to Macedonia, he met
16 and kissed Olympia. And King Philip gazed on her, and said, 'To whom, O Olympia, hast thou given thyself up. For sinned thou hast, yet not sinned, for as much as thou hast brooked frowardness from a god. But I have seen all that has
20 been done by a god on thee, in a dream: therefore be blameless in my eyes, and the eyes of all men!'

With the dragon's aid King Philip wins the fight, and coming back he speaks as in joke to his wife as to what has befallen her.

HOW ANECTANABUS IN THE SHAPE OF A DRAGON CAME BEFORE PHILIP AT A FESTIVAL AND KISSED OLYMPIA.

On a certain day Philip was feasting with his lords and chieftains of Macedonia and with Olympia his wife. And
24 Anectanabus through wizardry took on himself the shape of a dragon, and, passing through the midst of the couch whereon they lay apart, whistled so loudly that all the revellers were stricken with fear, and the greatest dread, and coming near
28 Olympia, he put his head on her breast and kissed her. Philip, seeing this, spoke to Olympia, 'Woman, thee and all I tell; beheld this dragon, what time I laid my enemies low.'

At a feast Anectanabus comes to Olympia as a dragon and Philip tells the guests what has happened.

HOW A BIRD LAID AN EGG IN PHILIP'S BOSOM AT WHOSE
BREAKING THERE CAME FORTH A SERPENT, WHICH FORTH-
WITH DIED.

A bird lays
an egg
in King
Philip's
lap, which
breaking
gives forth
a snake,
which
before it
can go back
dies. His
sorcerer
reads him
its mean-
ing.

And a few days after this Philip the king was sitting in his palace, and there appeared unto him a little and most gentle bird, which flew into his bosom and laid an egg. And the egg, falling to the ground, was broken. And at once there crept 4
forth from it a very little snake. And it turned around, wishful to go into the egg, but, before it might put in its head, it was quenched. And Philip, seeing this, was heavily distressed, and called to him Arideus, and showed him the monstrous thing he 8
had seen. And Arideus said to him, 'King Philip, a son shall be born to thee, who shall reign after thy death, and shall fare forth over the whole world and sway all peoples, and ere he come back to the land of his birth, shall die by a most swift 12
death.'

The queen
is com-
forted by
wizardry
till the
child is
born.

And as the time of child-birth was drawing nigh, Olympia began to feel pain, and her womb was tormented, and she bade Arideus be called to her, and spoke with him: 'Master, my 16
womb is wrenched with very heavy labours.' Anectanabus [*sic in both editions* 1489 and 1494] then spake: 'Raise thyself awhile from thy throne, for in this hour the elements are troubled by the sun.' This was done, and the pain went from 20
her. And soon after, Anectanabus said to her, 'Sit down, O Queen!' and she sate herself and bore a child. And as soon as the boy was fallen on to the earth, a mighty thunderclap and thunderbolts, with tokens and lightnings came about through- 24
out the whole world. Then night was spread forth and lasted, it reaching unto the last hour of day. Then parts of the clouds fell down in Italy. And seeing these signs, Philip the king was afrighted, and went in to Olympia, and said: 'I deemed 28
that this little babe should in no wise be fostered. For he is not conceived of me, but of some god, for at his birth I beheld the heavens changed. Yet let him be fostered in my memory, as though he were my son, and follow in the stead of a son 32
I begot through another wife.' And when he said this, she handled the babe with great care. And the boy's face had the likeness neither of father nor mother. The hair on his head

Mighty
wonders
happen,
and Philip
is per-
suaded to
let the
child be
fostered
as though
he were his
own son.

was shaggy as a lion's. His eyes glistened like the stars, but each beamed with its own hue, one black, the other yellow. And his teeth were sharp, and his eager rush as a lion's. His shape foreshadowed his energy and forethought. By his parents he was called Alexander. In the schools, and wheresoever he sate, he strove with them in letters and disputations, and by his keen swiftness won the mastership. And when he was twelve years old, he was beweaoned for battle, and excelled in arms. And Philip, seeing how quick he was, praised him, and said: 'Son Alexander, I love thy speed, and wit of mind for its work. But I am sore and feel foolish that thy form is so unlike mine.' And Olympia heard this, and was greatly afraid. And she called hither Anectanabus, and said: 'Master, learn from me what Philip misdeemeth. For he said to Alexander, "Son, I love thy speed and wit of mind. But, that thy shape is unlike mine, I am saddened."' And Anectanabus began to think, and said: 'His thought is nowise harmful.' And gazing aloft as he was wont, he looked on a certain star, and riddled out his wish. And when Alexander heard this, he spake: 'The star thou seest is seen in the heavens?' And Anectanabus replied: 'My son, it is.' Alexander said: 'Canst thou show it unto me?' Anectanabus answered: 'Follow me in the hour of night, and I will show it unto thee.' Alexander said: 'Thy fate is not known to thee, or uncertain?' Anectanabus replied: 'Enough of this.' Alexander said: 'I would fain know it.' Anectanabus answered: 'In truth know that from my son shall come my death.' This said, as he went down from the palace, Alexander followed him in the hour of the evening without the city. And when they arrived up on to the ditch of the city, Anectanabus spake: 'Son Alexander, gaze thou on the stars; look how the star of Hercules is perplexed, and how Mercury's star is blithe. If I see Jove sparkling, my doom telleth me of my coming death at the hands of my son.' At this sight Alexander came up nigh to him, and made an onslaught on him, making him fall

The child is like neither father nor mother; his eyes are starlike, one black one yellow, his teeth sharp. He is called Alexander.

In the schools and at arms he excels all. Philip tells him how he loved him yet was grieved at his birth.

Olympia fearing tells this to Anectanabus, who says it is not harmful.

Anectanabus, being with Alexander, sees a star which when shown again, he announces to foretell his death at his son's hands. Alexander holding this a lie rushes against him.

[*The early Text begins.*]

downd in to þe dyke, and thare he felle, & was aff to-frusched; and það Alexander said vn-to hym one this wyse. 'Fals

Leaf 1.
Anectanabus falls

into the
dyke and
Alexander
tells him it
is right
punish-
ment.

Anectana-
bus tells
Alexander
that he is
his own
son.
Alexander
reproaches
his mother.

A Prince of
Macedonia
brings a
fierce horse
to the
palace
which the
king uses
to slay evil-
doers.

King Philip
has an
oracle of
his gods.

Alexander
taught the
seven
sciences by
Aristotle
and Calis-
thenes.

wreche,' quop he, 'that presume3 to tell thynges þat ere to com, re3te als þou were a prophete, and knewe þe preuate3 of heuen. Now may þou see that þou lye3, And þarefore þou arte worthy to haue swilke a dede.' And than Anectanabus 4 ansuerd, & said: 'I wyste wele ynoghe,' quop he, 'þat I scholde die swylke a dede. Talde I no3te lange are to þe, that mynd awennd soñ schulde slae me?' 'Whi, ame I thi soñ?' þaþ quop Alexandire: '3aa, for sothe,' quop Anectanabus, 'I gat the.' 8 And wit þat word, he 3alde þe gaste. And than Alexander hert tendird oñ his Fader, And he tuke hym vp on his bakke, and bare hym to þe palace. And when his moder Olympias saw hym, Scho said vn-tiff hym. 'Soñ,' quop scho, 'what 12 es that?' 'Als thi foly hase made it,' quop he, 'so it es.' And than he gert berye hym wirchipfully.

¹ In the mene tyme, a prynce of Macedoyne broghte þe ² kyng a horse vn-temed, a grete and a faire; & he was tyed oñ ilke 16 side wit chynes of Ireñ, for he walde wery men and ete þaþ. This ilke horse was called Buktiphalas³, bi-cause of his vgly luyng, For he hade a heued lyke a buffe, & knottiffs in his frount, as þay had bene þe bygynnyng of hournes. And when 20 þe kyng saw þe bewtee of this horse, he said tiff his seruandis, 'Take3 this horse and putte3 hym in a stable, and makes barre3 of yreñ be-fore hym, that thef3 and oper mysdoers, þat saff be done to dede, may be putt in-tiff hym, to be slaen of hym. 24 And þay didd soo. In þe mene tyme þe kyng Philippe had ane answeere of his goddes, that hee schulde regne nexte after hym, the whilke myghte ryde that wylde horse wit-owtten harme. So it felle þat Alexander þe whilke was þaþ twelue 3ere 28 alde, wexe strange & re3te hardy, & was wysse and discrete; for he was wele lered & connand in aff þe seuend sciences, þe whilke twa philosophirs had teched hym: þat es to say, Arestotle & Calistene. And one a day, as Alexander passed 32 for-by þe place þare als þe foresaide stode, he loked in be-twene þe barre3 of yrnne and saw, bifore þe horse, mens hend and fete, & oper of þaire membris, liggand scatered here & thare, and he had grete wonder þare-off. And he putt in his 36

¹ Space for miniature blank, ten lines.

² a changed by scribe into þe.

³ Buktiphalas. In MS. a blot has

smudged out all the i except a dot, and obscured the p, making it look like *Buktsphalas*, but it reads really as above.

- hande bitwene þe barrez, And þe horse * strekede oute his nekke, als ferre als he myghte, and likked Alexander hand; and he knelið douñ oñ his kneesse, and bi-helde Alexander in þe vesage
 4 langly. And Alexander vnderstode wele þe will of þe horse, and opynd the barrez, and went into þe horse, and straked him softly on þe bakke wít his rihte hand; And belyfe þe horse wexe wonderly meke tíff Alexander; and rihte as a honde will
 8 couche when his maister biddes hym, so dide he tíff Alexander; and Alexander lukede besides hym, & sawe a sadiñ & a brydeñ hyng thare; and he tuke & dyd það oñ hym, & leppe one his bakke; & rade furthe oñ hym. And when the kyng Philippe
 12 sawe hym do so, he said vn-tíff hym 'Mi soñ Alexander' quop he: 'All þe ansuers of our goddez are fulfillede in the! For when I ame dede, þou moñ regne after me' And Alexander ansuerd, & said 'I pray the, Fader,' quop he, 'ordeyne me horse
 16 & meñ, for I gaa seke dedez of armez.' 'For sothe' quop þe kyng wít a glade chere, 'Take þe a hundreth horse, and xl thosandez pounde of golde; and take wít the of þe worthieste knyghtez þat langez to me, and wendis furthe.' And he didd so.
 20 And he tuke wít hym also a philosophre þat highte Eufestius, whilke he traysted mekiñ in, And twelue childe þat he chese to be his playfers, and went hym furthe, and come in-tíff a contreth þat es called Polipone. And when the
 24 kyng of þe land herd teñ, þat swilke meñ ware entred in-to his rewme in swilke araye, he raysed a gret Oste, and come agaynes Alexander for to feghte wít hym. And when he come nerehand hym, he said vn-tíff hym. 'Teñ me' quop he
 28 'whatt þou ert?' And Alexander ansuerd 'I am Alexander' quop he 'þe soñ of Philippe, þe kyng of Macedoyne.' 'And what hopez þou þat I be?' quop þe kyng tíff hym. And Alexander ansuerd. 'Þou ert kyng of Arridouus' quop he.
 32 'Neuer-þe-lesse, if all I do þe þat wirchippe þat I calle þe kyng, empride þe nathynge þare-of. For meñ seez ofte tymes meñ þat ere in heghe astate com to lawe degree, & meñ þat ere in lawe degree, come tíff heghe astate.' 'Þou sais rihte
 36 wele' quop þe kyng. 'Take hede to thyñ aweñ selfe!' And Alexander ansuerd & said 'Ga hethen away fra me' quop he 'for þou can say noghte to mee, ne I hafe noghte at do wít þe.' And það þe kyng was worder wrathe, And said tíff Alexander

* Leaf 1 bk.
 Alexander sees Bucephalus.
 Bucephalus bows and submits to him.

Philip sees Alexander riding Bucephalus and says the oracles are fulfilled.

Philip at Alexander's asking gives him arms and men to invade foreign territory.

Alexander's encounter with the King of the Arridons.

They quarrel fiercely.

* Leaf. 2

The king challenges Alexander. Alexander accepts, and they both go home to gather forces.

' Luke on me ' * quop he ' þat spekes to the: Fore I swere the be my Fader hele, & I anes spitte in thi face, þou schale dye.' And wit þat he spitte at Alexander, & said: ' Take þe þare, þou biche whelpe, þat þe semeȝ tilf hafe.' And Alexander 4 stepped furthe, & said vn-till hym. ' For þou ' quop he ' hase dispised me, by-cause I ame littill; I swere þe, bi þe pete of my Fader, & by my moders wambe, in þe whilke I was cousayued of godd Amond, þat þou schall see mee, are oughte lunge, in 8 þi rewme, redi to feghte wit þe; and owþer I schall wyrd thi rewme wit dynte of swerd, & bynunge it vnder my subieccion, or þou schall make me subiecte vn-to þe.' And þare þay assignede day of Batelle; and ayther of þam went hame fra 12 oþer.

Alexander gathers his army, meets King Nicholas and slays him after the fight.

¹ And agaynes þe day of Batelle, Alexander, bi ascent & ordynance of kyng Philippe, gadird a grete Oste, & went to the place þare þe Batelle was assigned, and fand all redy þare, 16 kyng Nicholl and his oste. And þay trumped vp appon bathe þe parties, and bigaþ to feghte, & many meþ ware slaen oþ bathe þe sydeȝ. Bot at þe laste, Alexander hade þe felde, & tuke kyng Nicholl, & gart smytte of his heued, & went in-till 20 his land, and conquered it; and his knyghtes went and coround hym kyng þare-off. And sytheþ he went hame tilf his fader, kyng Philippe, and fand hym sittand at the mete at a bridale: For he had put awaye fra hym his wyfe Olympias, Alexander 24 moder, and taken hym an-oþer þat highte Cleopatra; And Alexander went in-to þe haulfe, and said vn-to þe kyng Philipp: ' Fader,' quop he, ' I pray ȝow, þat for a rewarde of my firste iournee þat I hafe now made, ȝee graunte me to take 28 my Moder Olympias agayne vn-to ȝow, & do to hir as awe to be done to a qwenne², rathere þaþ I gyffe hir to anoþer kyng; so þat I be noȝte ȝoure enemy for euer. For this weddyng, þat ȝe hafe now made here, es vnlesuff!' Wheþ 32 he hadd said thir wordes, ane of þe þat satt at þe kynges burde, whase name was Lesias, ansuerd & said to þe kyng: ' lord' quop he ' þou schall hafe a soþ of Cleopatra, and he schall regne after þe!' Alexander, thaþ, was gretly grenede at his 36 wordes, and wit a wardrere þat he hade in his hande, he went

On his home-coming, he finds his father at bridal with a new wife, and begs him to take Olympia back again,

lest Alexander, giving her to another king, be his foe. One Lesias jeeringly foretelling that Cleopatra shall bear Philip an heir,

¹ Place for miniature blank, twelve half-lines.

² MS. *qwenne* with *e* inserted above text.

till hym and kellede¹ hym. Wheñ kyng Philippe sawe this, he was gretly stirred, and rase vp, & gatt a swerde * & ranne to-wardez Alexander, for to hafe smytten hym. Bot onane
 4 he felle down; and ay þe nerre Alexander þat he drewe, þe mare he felle to the erthe rizte as he bene ferd. And þañ Alexander said vn-till hym: 'Philippe' quop he 'how es it soo, that þou, þat hase wonñ wit dynt of swerde alle Grece,
 8 ne hase now na strenghe to stande on thi fete.' And þañ añ þe hauße was troubled, and the brydale letted. And Alexander went abowte þe hauße, and keste douñ þe bourdez wit þe mete, & þe drynke þat ware appoñ þañ, and tuke
 12 Cleopatra, and schotte² hir oute at þe hauße dore. And the kyng Philippe, for sorowe þat he tuke till, felle grefe sek. And a littill afterwardez, Alexander went till hym for to vesett hym & comforthe hym, and said vn-till hym 'Philippe,'
 16 quop he, 'if añ it be nozte semely, þat I calle þe be þi propre name; neuere-þe-lesse, nozte as þi soñ, bot as þi gud' frend, I sall tette the myñ avice. It es fully my consaile þat þou reconnselle agayne vn-to the my lady,
 20 my Moder Olympias, and at þou grefe þe na-thinge at þe dede of Lesias, ne take na heynes to the þare-fore. For vn-kyndely me thynke þat þou didd, and vngudely, þat þou drewe þi swerde for to smytte me þare-wit.' And wheñ Philippe
 24 herd þir wordes, his hert tendird, & he bigane to wepe. And þañ Alexander went till his Moder Olympias, and said vn-till hir: 'Be nozte ferde' quop he 'ne be nozte heuy to my fader, for if alle thi trespas be preuce, & nozte knaweñ, neuer-þe-lesse
 28 þou erte in party to blame.' And wheñ he hade sayde thus, he ledd hir furthe to þe kyng Philippe. And he tuk & kyssid hir, and thus was scho reconnselde vn-till hym agayne.

³ After þis, þare come messengers Fra Darius, þe emperour of Perse, to kyng Philippe, and asked hym tribute And Alexander answerd to thir messengers, & saile, 'Saise to Darius, 3our lorde,' quop he, 'þat señ þe tyme þat Philippe soñ was waxeñ of age þe hen þat ay es waxeñ barayne & consumed'

Alexander slays him.
 * Leaf 2 bk.

King Philip having in vain sought to kill Alexander, Alexander upsets the feast and casts out Cleopatra.

King Philip having fallen sick, Alexander goes to be reconciled with him.

Philip weeps and Alexander brings him and Olympias together again.

Messengers come from Darius the Emperor of Persia, to whom Alexander refuses the

¹ The first vowel is either a *y* changed into *e*, or an *e* changed into *y*. Hence it is uncertain if *kyllede* or *kellede* was written first. I think *kyllede* was first written and changed to *kellede* from the link with

next letter.

² MS. seems certainly when magnified to write *o*, *schotte*, although it is blotted.

³ Space left for miniature, eleven half lines.

wonted tribute.

awaye, and so es Darius pryuede of his trybute.' And [when] thir messengers herd thir wordes; þay hade grete wounder of þam & of þe witt & þe wisdome of Alexander.

Armenia rises, Alexander subjugates it.

* Leaf 3.

In þe mene tyme tythynges come to kyng Philippe, þat Ermony, 4
þe whilke bi-fore was suget vn-till hym, was rebeffe & raysse agaynes hym. And he garte *semble a grete Oste, and sent Alexander thedir *pare wit* to feghte wit þam, and to putt þam agayne vnder his subieccion. Alexander than went wit this Oste 8
till Ermony & broghte it agayne in subieccion, as it was bi-fore.

Pansamy, a lord, covets Philip's wife and kingdom; he revolts and wounds king Philip to the death.

An in þe mene tyme, whils he was *pare*, a lorde of Macedoyne þe whilke highte Pansamy, a strange mañ & a balde, suget vn-to Philippe, and hade of lange tyme couette for to hafe þe quene 12
Olympias, conspirede agaynes þe kyng, and come with a grete multytude of folke appon þe kyng, to for-do hym. And wheñ tythynges here of come to kyng Philippe, he went to mete hym in þe felde wit a fewe menzee. And wheñ he sawe þe grete multi- 16

tude þat Pansamy hade wit hym, he turned & fled, and Pansamy persued after hym, and ouerhied hym, and strake hym thurgh with a spere, and 3itt ife all he were greuosity wounded, he dyed nozte alson, bot he laye halfe dede in the waye. And than 20
þe Macedoynes, þat wenede he hade bene dede, made mekiff sorowe. And when þis iournee was done Pansamy was gretly empridede *pare offe*, & went in to þe kynges palace for to take þe quene Olympias oute of it and hafe hir with hym. 24

Alexander comes back in the midst of the troubles and his mother goes to meet him.

And euen þe same tyme, Alexander come fra Hermony, & sawe¹ swylke trouble & styrrynge in the rewme, and hyed hym faste towarde þe kynges palace, and when Olympias herd telle þat Alexander hir soñ had þe victorye of his enemys, 28
& was comande nere, Scho went furthe of þe palace at a preuee posterne to mete hir soñ, and to welcome hym hame. And alson als scho come nere hym, scho criede appon hym & said.

Pansamy goes forth to meet Alexander, but Alexander slays him.

'A A, my son Alexander, whare es þe grace & þe fortune 32
þat oure goddes highte the, þat es to say, þat þou scholde alwaye ouercome thynñ enemys & nozte be ouercomen, þat Pansamy hase one þis wyse slaen thi Fader.' And alson the worde come to Pansamy þat Alexander was comen, and he 36
went furthe of palace for to mete hym. And also faste als Alexander sawe hym, he oute wit a swerd and clafe his heued

¹ MS. blotted at *sawe*.

in to þe tethe, & slewe hym. And ane of þe Oste said̄ tiſt Alexander: 'Philippe þi fader' quop̄ he, 'lyes dede in þe felde.' And þan Alexander went thedir thare he laye, and
 4 saw hym eueið at þe dyinge. And þaið he begaið faste for to wepe. And Philippe loked apoið hym, & said̄. 'A A, my dere son Alexander,' quop̄ he, 'wit a glade hert [I] may now dye, for þat þou so sounne hase venged̄ my dede,' & eueið wit * þat
 8 worde he 3alde þe gaste. And Alexander wirchipfully gert hym be entered̄.

Alexander is told of his father's dying state. He goes to him and hears his last words.

Philip dies.
 * Leaf 3 bk.

¹ When kyng Philippe was entered, Alexander went and sett hym in his trone, and gerte calle by-fore hym alle þe folke þat
 12 was gaderd̄ thedir, lordes & oper, and said̄ vn-to þaið on þis wyse. 'Meið,' quop̄ he, 'of Macedoyne of Tracy, and of Grece byhaldez þe feigure of Alexander and puttez̄ oute of 3our hertes drede of alle 3our enemys. For sekerly, and 3e will take
 16 gude hertis to 3ow, thurghe þe helpe of oure goddis he schaff hafe þe ouerhande of all 3oure neghtebours, and 3our name schaff spred̄ ouer alle the werlde. And þare-fore ilkane of 3ow þat
 hase Armour, makes it redy, and he þat hase nane come to my
 20 palace & I sañ gerre delyuer hym all þat hym nedis, and ilk a mañ make hym redy to þe werre.' And whenið þe lordes and knyghtis þat ware of grete age, herd̄ thir wordes þay ansuerd̄ Alexander, & said̄ vn-tiſt hym: 'lorde,' quop̄ thaye, 'we hafe
 24 seruede 3oure fader a longe tyme & traueid̄ wit hym in his werres, & þare-fore we ere now so bryssed̄ in armes þat þare [es] no myghte leste in vs for to suffre disesse þat ofteñ tymes falles to meið of werre. For we ere streken̄ in grete age. And
 28 þare-fore, if it be plesynge vn-to 3ow, we consaile 3ow & we beseken 3owe, that 3e chese 3ow 3ong lordes & 3ong knyghtes, þat ere listy meið & able for to suffre disesse for to be wit 3ow. For here we giffe vp att armes if it be 3our will & forsakes
 32 þaið for euer.' And þaið Alexander answerd̄ & said̄: 'I will rather,' quop̄ he, 'chese þe sadnesse of an alde wyse mañ thañ þe vnavesy lightnesse of 3onge meið. For 3ong meið often tymes traystand̄ to mekill in thaire awenið doghtynes thurgh
 36 þaire awenið foly ere mescheued̄. Bot alde meið wirkes all by consaile & by witte.' Whenið he had said̄ thir wordes all meið

After Philip's burial, Alexander calls his folk together and harangues them.

He foretells to them their rule over the world, and bids them get ready their weapons for war.

But those of great age beg leave that they should not be made to go on new wars, but rather the younger men.

Old men work with wisdom, young men with boldness and rashness.

¹ Twelve half lines space for miniature in MS.

They allow
and con-
sent to his
words.

allowed his hie witte and hally þay assentede to hym for to do his lyste.

* Leaf 4.
Gathering
an army,
Alexander
ships to
Italy, first
taking
Chalcedo-
nia.

He takes
tribute of
the Ro-
mans and
of all
Europe as
far as the
West
Ocean.

Thence
sailing to
Africa he
subjugates
it.

The advent-
ure with
the hart.

He sacri-
fices to
Amon,
praying
the oracle.

He goes to
Taphoresey
and sacri-
fices to his
gods.

The Vision
of Serapis.

¹ Sone after Alexander assemblede a grete Oste, & went bi Schippe to-wardez Ytaly, and als he come by Calcedoyne, he assaylled it rezte strangly, and þe folke of Calcedoyne * went to þe walles of þe Citee and defendid manly. Bot at the laste Alexander wañ the Citee, and fra thethyñ he Schippede in-till Italy. And alsoe als þe Romaynes herd of his comynge þay were wonder ferde for hym, and the grete lordes of þe lande tuke fourty thowsandeꝝ of besandeꝝ and 1^c corounes of golde, and went vn-till hym, and present hym wit þañ & bysoughte hym þat he scholde nozte werrey appoñ þañ, ne do þañ na harme. And than Alexander tuke trybute of þe Romaynes, and of alle the folkes þat duelt bitwixe that & þe weste Occeane, þe whilke regione es callede Europe, & lefte þañ in gude pesse.

² Fra thethyn he Schippede in-till Affrice, in thee whilke he fande bot fewe þat rebelled agaynes hym and þarefore als [men] swa saye, eueñ sodeynly he conquerid it & broghte it vnder his subieccioñ. And fra Affric he went by Schippe till ane Ile, þat es called Frontides, for to consaile wit a godd þat þay called Amon. And as Alexander & his meñ went to-wardez þe temple of þis for-said godd, þay mett in þe waye a grete hert þe whilke Alexander bad his meñ sla wit arowes. And þay schott at hym; bot nane of þañ myghte hitt hym. And þañ Alexander tuke a bowe & schotte at hym & hitt hym & slewe hym. And þañ Alexander went in-to þe temple, & made sacrafyce of þis hert vn-to godd Amon, and by-soughte hym þat he schulde gyffe hym ansuares. Wheñ Alexander hade made his prayers þare to godd Amon, he went wit his Oste in-till a place þat highte Taphoresey, In þe whilke were feftene gude townnes, & þay hade twelue grete reuers þat rane in-to þe see, and at þe entree of þañ in-to þe see þare was draweñ ouer grete chynes of yryne, and thare Alexandir made Sacrafice till his goddez. And on þe same nyghte, a godd þat [hight] Serapis apperid vn-till hym in his slepe, cledd in riche clothyng in ane horrible forme & a dredefull, and said vn-till

¹ Three lines miniature S.

² Five lines miniature F.

³ MS. has xv crossed through before *feftene*.

hym. 'Alexander,' quop he, 'may þou take þis montayne on þi schulder & here it a-way?' Quop Alexander, 'how myghte any mañ do þat?' And Serapis ansuerd & said, 'righte as þis
 4 montayne sañ neuer wit-owten *end be remowed hethen, so thi name & thi dedes schaff be made mynde of to the worldes end.'
 And than Alexander prayed hym þat he walde prophycye hym what kyns dede he schokle die. Serapis ansuerd and said, 'It
 8 es noghte spedfull till a man to knawe his paynefull endynge. For if he knewe it, peraventure, he scholde neuer hafe Ioye in his hert. Neuer þe lesse bi-cause þou hase prayede me to telle þe, I sañ say the. After a drynke þou schaff take thi dede.
 12 For in thi zouth þou sañ make thyñ endynge. Bot spirre me noþer þe tyme ne þe houre when it schal be, For I will on na wyse telle it to the. For-whi goddez of þe este partiez of þe werlde sañ telle the alle thi werdez.' When Alexander
 16 wakkened of his dreame, he was righte heuy, and sent þe maste substance of his Oste to þe Cite of Askalon and bad þañ habide hym thare, and hym selfe & a certane of menze wit hym habade & thare he garte make a Citee & called it Alexander
 20 after his awenñ name.

¹In the mene tyme þe Egipeyens herd of þe comynges of Alexander, & þay went agaynes hym & submytt þañ vn-till hym & resayffed hym wirchipfully. And when Alexander come
 24 in-till Egipste, he fand ane ymage of a kyng made of blake stane curiously corueñ, and he askede þe Egipcians whase ymage it was, and þay ansuerd & said, 'It es þe ymage,' quop þay, 'of Anectanabus that was kyng of Egipste nozte lange sythen
 28 gane, þe wyseste & þe worthiest þat euer was þare-iñ.' For sothe quop² Alexander, 'Anectanabus was my Fader.' And þan he knelid douñ with grete reuerence & kyssed þe ymage. Fra thethyñ he went wit his Oste to Surry. But þe
 32 Surriens agayne-stude³ hym and faghte wit hyñ and slewe many of his knyghtes. Neuer þe lesse Alexander had þe victorye. And þañ he went to Damaske, & Ensegged it & wanne it, and fra thethyñ he went to Sydon & wan it.
 36 And þañ he went vnto þe Citee of Tyre and layde Ensegge abowte it, and [in] þis Ensegge he laye many a day. And thare

* Leaf 4 bk.

Serapis foretells him his lasting fame, his deeds, his death. But of some things Serapis may not speak.

Alexander awakens saddened. He sends his main strength on to Askal. Where he was he founded the city of Alexandria.

The Egyptians hearing of his coming submit. He sees the image of Anectanabus.

He acknowledges Anectanabus as his father.

He invades Syria, takes Damascus, Sidon, and sets about the siege of Tyre.

¹ Five half lines space for miniature I.

² quop Alexander in margin.

³ Scribe wrote *agaynesande* and altered it to *agaynestude*.

Tyre resists stoutly, and he has to set a boom across the haven.

* Leaf 5.

Alexander sends for help to Jaddus, Bishop of the Jews, and also demands tribute.

The Bishop pleads the oath of fealty sworn to Darius.

Alexander swears to wreak vengeance on the Jews.

He sends Meleager with 500 men to Josaphat to forage. They defeat the Lord of the country and slay him.

But the Lord of the city sends help and

his Oste suffered many dysessez. For þat Cite was so strange in it-selfe by-cause of þe ground, þat it was sett apou, and by-cause of grete towres & many þat ware abowte it, and also bicause it was so enclosed wit the see þat it myghte noghte 4 lightly * be wonne, by nane assawte. Alexander þa, vmbithoghte hym, one what wyse he myghte best com to for to destroy þis citee, and he gerte make a grete bastell of tree, and sett it apou schippes in þe see euen forgaynes þe cete, so þat 8 þare myghte no shippez come nere the haue, for to vetaille þe Citee or suppo, it wit me, by-cause of þe bastelle. In þe mene tyme Alexander Oste hade grete defawte of vetaylis, and þa he sent lettres vnto Iadus, þat at that tyme was 12 bischoppe & gouernoure of þe Iewes, and prayede hym for to suppo, hym wit sou me, and also þat he walde send su, vetails for hym & his Oste, and he scholde pay for þa, wit a glade chere, and þat he scholde also send hym the tribute 16 þat he scholde gyffe Darius þe emperour of Perse. For hym ware better, he said, hafe his frenchippe þa, þe frenchipe of Darius. The Bischoppe þa, of þe Iewes ansuerd þe messangers þat broghte hym þe lettres & said, 'I hafe,' quop he, 'made 20 athe to Darius, þat, whils he leffez, I schaff neuer bere armes agaynes hy, and þarefore I ne may nozte do agaynes my Athe.' The Messagers þa, went till Alexander & talde hym þe bischopes ansuere, and he was greued & said, 'I make my 24 avowe,' quop he, 'vntill oure goddes, þat I schaff take swilke vengeance on þe Iewes þat I schaff make þa, to knawe, whethir it es better to þa, to be obeisant vn-to [my?] commandement, or vn-to þe kynges of Perse.' And he callede a duke, þat highte 28 Melagere, and wit v me, of armes, and badd þa, gaa in to þe vale of Iosaphat, þe whilke was full of bestez & brynge of these bestez to þe Oste for to vetaille þa, wit. And ane Sampson, þat knewe þe cuntre wele was þaire gyde. Þay went in to þe 32 vale, and gadird to gedir catell wit-owte nombir & be-ga, for to dryfe o, þa. And he þat was lorde of þe cuntre, Theosellas bi name, rayسد a grete multitude of folke and mett þa, & faughte wit þa, & slewe many of þa. Bot Melagere & his 36 felaws at þat ty, had þe better. And ane þat highte Caulus went baldly to Theosellas, & smate of his heued. All this was done bot a littill fra þe citee of Gadir. And þa, Bertyne,

lorde of þe citee, seand' this, was gretely stirrede and ischewede
 owte of þe citee & wit xxx fehtyng meñ and sett vp a schowte
 apouñ the * Macedoynes alle at anes, that alle þe erthe trembled'
 4 wit-alle. And' when þe Macedoyns saw that grete multytude
 of folke com' apouñ þaũ, þay were rezte ferde. And þan
 Melagere walde hafe sent a Messangere to paire lorde Alexander,
 for to come & socoure þaũ, bot he mygte fynd' na mañ þat
 8 walde vndertake þe Message. Than thir twa batalles met
 Sameñ & faughte to-gedir, and thare was Sampson slaen,
 and Bertyne. And þe Macedoyns wit þe grete multitude of
 paire enemys ware dreueñ abakke, and lyke for to be dreueñ
 12 abakke & discomfites. And ane of þe grekkes, þat highte
 Arttes, seyng þe meschefe þay stode In, wan' hym owte of the
 Bataile & went in alle þe haste, þat he myghte, tiff Alexander
 & talde hym þat þe Grekkes & þe Macedoynes ware in poynte
 16 to be mescheuede, bot if he suppoellde þaũ þe tittere. And
 than Alexander lefte þe segge of Tyre, and went wit his
 Oste to þe vale of Iosaphat, and fand' his meñ riȝte harde
 by-stadde wit paire enemys. And he and his Oste vmbylapped'
 20 alle paire enemys, and daunge þaũ douñ & slewe þaũ ilke
 a moder soñ. And when he had so done he turned' agayne
 vn-to Tyre, and fande the Bastelle, þat he hade made in þe See,
 donged' doune to þe grounde. For alsoñ als Alexandere was
 24 gane fra Türe to þe vale of Iosaphat, Balañ þat was lorde of
 Tyre ischewid' oute of þe citee wit thee folke þare-of, & assailed'
 the bastell manfully, and tuk it & dange it doune. And when
 Alexander sawe that, he was gretly angerde, and his hert
 28 wonder heuy, and so ware alle þe Macedoynes and the Grekes.
 In so mekill thay ware nerehand' in dispeire for to wyñ þe
 citee, and ware in poynte to hafe rissen¹ up þe segge. And
 one þe nyghte nexte suande, Alexander, als he laye & slept,
 32 dremyd' þat he hadd' in his hand' a grape, þe whilke hym
 thoghte he keste doune vnder his fete, and trade þare-one,
 & alsone þare rañ oute of it a grete dele of wyne. And when
 Alexander wakned', he called' tiff hym a Philosophre & talde
 36 hym his dreme. And þe Philosophre ansuerde, 'be balde,'
 quop he, ' & lefe noȝte to ensegge Tyre, for þe grape þat þou

the Macedonians are driven back.

* Leaf 5 bk.

One of the Greeks sends for help to Alexander, who, leaving the siege of Tyre, outflanks the enemy of Josaphat and slays them all.

Alexander, returning to Tyre, finds his boom thrown down, for Balan had sortied with all his people. So despairing are the Greeks that they almost give up the siege.

The next night Alexander dreams a dream and, when his

¹ MS. rissen, perhaps for zissen, but the same idiom is found elsewhere.

Philosopher interprets it, he is cheered.

helde in thi hand, and keste vnder thi fete, and trade þare-one, es þe Citee of Tyre, þe whilk þou saff wynð thurgh streuth and trede it with thi fote, and þare-fore be na-thinge abaiste.¹ When Alexander herd thire wordes, he was gretly comforthed,⁴ and vmbithoghte hym one whate wyse he myghte gette this Citee.

* Leaf 6.

He makes another boom on ships higher than the highest city tower. He directs his men how to attack.

And than he * garte make anoþer bastelle in þe see, grettere, & hyere, and strangere þan þe toper was. For it was hie 8 þan þe hegheste towre of þe citee. And þis bastelle was tyede wit a hundrethe ankers. þan Alexander gert armede hym¹ suerely & wele, & wente by hym ane vp apouð this bastelle, and badd all his men þat þay schulde make þan redy for to fechte¹² & to giffe assawte to þe citee. And alsone als þay sawe hym entire in to þe citee, þay scholde all at anes presse to þe walles, and scale þan, and clymbe ouer þe walles baldely & wyð þe citee. And when all men weren redy, hee gerte smyte¹⁶ sounder þe cabillis þat þe bastelle was tyed wit, & þe wawes of þe see bare it to þe walles of þe Citee. And Alexander delyuerlye stert apouð [þe] walles, where Balað stode, and rað apouð hym & slew hym and keste hym ouer þe walles in-to²⁰ þe dyke of þe citee. And when þe Macedoyns & þe Grekes sawe Alexander entir in-to þe citee, þay schouffed to þe walles all at anes, and clambe ouer, sum wit leddirs sum on oþer wyse wit-owtten any resistence. For þe Tyreyenes was so ferde by-²⁴ cause of þe dedde of Balað þaire duc þat þay ne durste noghte turne agayne ne defende þe wallez. And ouð this wyse was þe citee takeð and doungeð doune to þe erthe.

Cutting the cables he lets the towers over the boom float in up-on the city. He, climbing the walls, slays Balan, and his followers rush all at once in-to the city. Tyre is destroyed.

Alexander takes Gaza and marches on Jerusalem.

The Bishop of the Jews, hearing this, calls the Jews before him, and orders fasting, prayer, and sacrifice. An Angel

Fra þe segge of Tyre Alexander & his men went to þe citee²⁸ of Gaza and assailed it, & wit schoite while þay wað it. And Fra thethyð hyed hym towardez Ierusalem for to ensegge it.

² Qwhen þe Bischoppe of þe Iewes herde tette þat Alexander was commaund toward Ierusalem, he gert call bifore hym all³² þe iewes þat ware in þe citee, and talde þan þe tythynges þat ware talde hym. And sythen he commandid þan þat þay schuld com to þe temple, and be þare in praynge Fastynges and wakyng & in sacrafice makyng vn-to godd, bisekand hym³⁶ of helpe & socoure. And þay did soo. And on þe nyghte nexte

¹ The *y* of *hyð* for *hym* is written over another letter scratched out.

² Twelve half lines space with miniature of a Q.

after, when þe Bischoppe hadd' made his sacrifice, and was
 lyand in prayers, he fell on slomeryng and ane Angelle appered
 vn-till hym, and sayd, 'Be nozte ferd,' quop he, 'bot swythe
 4 gere araye honestly all þe stretis of (þe) citee, and caste open
 the zates, and warne all þe folke þat þay aray þam̄ in whitte
 clethyng, and thi-selfe & alle þe prestis reueste; 3ow solempnely,
 and to-morne arely wende; furthe of þe citee agaynes Alexander
 8 in processioun. For hym by-houe; * regne & be lorde of alle
 þe werlde. Bot at þe laste þe wrethe of godd' sail falle apou
 hym.' When þe bischoppe* wakened' of his slepe, he called' till
 hym þe iewes and talde þam̄ his reuelacioun, and bad þam̄ do
 12 all als þe Angelle hade schewed' hym̄. And þay did' so. For
 þay arayed' þe strete; of þe cetee and cledde þam̄ in whitte
 clethyng, and the bischope & þe prestis reueste þam̄, and
 bathe thay and alle þe folke went furthe of þe citee till a place
 16 whare þe temple & all þe citee may be seen̄. And þare þay
 habade þe comyng of Alexander. And when Alexander come
 nere þis foresaid place, and sawe be-for hym̄ swilke a multitude
 of folke, cledd' alle in whitte, and þe preste; arayed' solempnely
 20 in riche vestymentis, and þe byschope also in his pontyfcales
 and a mytir one his heued', and þare-apou a plate of golde,
 whare-one was wretyn þe name of grete godd' Tetragramaton, he
 commaunded all his meñ þat þay schulde halde þam̄ by-hynd'
 24 hym, and habude till he com̄ to þam̄. And he lighte off his
 horse, and went bi hym ane to þe iewes, And knelid' douw̄ to
 þe erthe and wirchippede þe hye name of godd, þat he saw
 þare wretyn̄ apou þe bischopes heued'. And þam̄ alle þe iewes
 28 knelid' douw̄ & saluste Alexander and cried all wit a voyce:
 'lyff lyffe,' quop þay, 'grete Alexander, lyffe, lyffe the gretteste
 Emperour of þe werlde, lyffe he þat sail ouer-com̄ all meñ and
 nozte be ouercomeñ. Prynce maste glorious and maste worthy
 32 of all þe prince; þat regne; apou erthe.' When þe kynges of
 Surry saw þis, þay hadd' grete wonder þare-off. And a prynce
 of Alexanders, þat highte Parmenou, said' vn-till Alexander:
 'Mi lorde þe Emperour,' quop he, 'we mervelle vs gretely þat
 36 þou, wham̄ all meñ wirchipe; and lowte; wirchipe; here þe
 bischope of þe Iewes.' And Alexander ansuered', 'I wirchipe
 nozte hym,' þis quop he, 'Bot Godd', whase state he presentet.
 For when I was in Macedoyne, and vmbithoghte me, on̄ what

of the Lord appears by night to the High Priest and shows him how the city may be freed—and utters a prophecy.

* Leaf 6 bk.

The Bishop awakens, and, doing as the Angel bids, he and his people go forth to meet Alexander, the folk in white, the Bishop in full Pontificals.

Alexander, seeing them, dismounting, kneels and worships the Name of God.

Alexander, being asked, tells them that he wor-

ships not the High Priest but God, and this because of a vision promising him the conquest of Darius.

He goes into Solomon's Temple and sacrifices. The Bishop shows him the prophecy of Daniel.

* Leaf 7.

The Bishop of the Jews asks that the laws of their fathers might be granted.

Alexander conquers the rest of Judaea.

Darius asks the fugitive Syrians as to what kind of man Alexander was. They show him a parchment

wyse I myzte conquere Assye, I saw hym slepand, in swilk habite & in swylke araye; and he lete as he sett nozte by me, bot went baldely furthe bi me. And for I see nane¹ in swilke arraye bot hym, I suppose it be he þat I saw in my slepe. ⁴ And þarefore I trowe þat thurgh þe helpe of Godd I saff ouercom̄ Daryus, þe kyng of Perse, and his grete pryde fordo. And all thyngeþ þat I caste in my hert fo[r] to do, it es my full triste þat thurgh his helpe I saff fulfill it, and wele byng ⁸ it to end. And þis es þe cause I wirchipped hym.' And when he hadd said thies wordes; he went in-to þe citee wit the bischope & þe presteþ, and went in-to þe temple þat Salamoñ made. And as þe bischope teched hym he offred ¹² sacrafice vn-to Godd. And þe bischope tuke Alexander in hande a buke of þe prophicye of Daniel*, in þe whilke he fand wretyñ, þat a mañ of Grece sulde distruy þe powere of Perse ². And Alexander was reghte gladde, supposynge þat ¹⁶ it was hym-selfe. And þañ he gaffe þe bischoppe & þe oper presteþ grete gyfteþ & riche & precyous, And badd þe bischope ashe of hym what so he walde. And the bischope askede þat he walde giffe þañ leue to vse þe same lawes þat þaire ²⁰ faderes vsed before þañ, and he graunted it. And þañ þe bischoppe askede þat ³ walde giffe þe Iewes þat ware in Medee & in Babyloyn, leue for to vse þaire lawes, & he graunted hym þat & all oper thyngeþ þat he walde aske. ²⁴

⁴ Alexander thañ went fra Ierusalem, & lefte thare Andromac his Messagere, and hym selfe & his Oste went to þe oper citeþ þat ware in þe lande of Iudee, and at ilke a citee þat he come to, he was wirchipfully ressayued. In þe mene tyme þe ²⁸ Surryens þat fledd fra Alexander, went to Perse, and talde þe emperour Darius how Alexander hadd done to þañ. And Darius spirred thayñ of his stature & of his schappe, and pay schewed hym purtrayed in a parchemyñ skynñ þe ymage of ³² Alexander. And alsone als Darius sawe it, he dispysed Alexander bycause of his littill stature, and be-lyfe he gerte

¹ MS. see nane twice over: 'see nane, see nane.'

² A more open handwriting begins most clearly after *Perse*.

³ Supply *he* between *þat* and *walde*.

⁴ Eleven half lines space for a minia-

ture which is lacking. A square is roughly drawn out, and in the square the words '*hic incipit*' scribbled. Beside the miniature in the margin is written '*rex equitans*.'

write a *lettre* and sent it till Alexander. And *pare-wit* he sent hym a handball & oper certane lapez in scorne. And pis is þe tenour of þe *lettre* þat he sent till hym.

4 ¹ 'Darius, kyng of kynges, and lord of all erthely lordes euēd like vnto sonne schynande, wit þe goddez of Perse, vntill Alexander oure *seruand* we send. We hafe vnderstandēd now on late, whare-of we meruelle vs gretely, þat þou ert so rayse^d 8 in pride and vayne glorye, þat þou hase semblede togedir a company of robbours and thefez oute of þe weste parties, and castez þe for to comē in-till oure parties, supposynge thurgh þan^d for to ouer-sett and constreyne þe grete myghte & þe 12 vertue of þe peryens, whase strenghte þou may neuer slokenē ne ouercome, suppose þou gadirde & sembled togedir all þe werlde. For I do þe wele to wiete þou myghte nerehand' alsonne nommer þe sternes of heuēd, as þe folke of þe empire of Perse. Oure 16 goddez also ², * by whayn^d all pis werlde es gouerned & sustened, prayssez & commendez oure name passyng all oper nacyns. 'Bot nozte wit-standynge pis; þou as a littill bisne & a dwerghē, a halfe man^d & ortez of alle men^d, desyrand to ouer- 20 passe þi littillnesse, rizte as a mouse crepez oute of hir hole, so þou ert croke^d out of þe lande of Sethyn^d, wenyngē wit a few rebawdez to conquere & optene þe landez of Perse brade & lange, & to ryotte & playe the in thayn^d as myesse douse in þe house 24 whare na cattes ere. Bot I þat priualy hase aspied thi gatez, when þou wenez moste seurely for to stertle abowte, I saff sterte apoⁿ þe & take þe; & so in wrechidnes saff thi dayes fouly hafe aⁿ ende. 'A grete Foly þou dide for to take apoⁿ the 28 swylke a *presumpeyon*. It ware full faire to þe, if þou myghte bi oure lefe, wit oure beneuolence, occupie all anely þe rewme of Macedoyne, zeldynge *parefore* till vs zereyly a certane tribute, if all þou couetid' nozte oure empire. *Pare-fore* it es gude þat 32 þou lefe thi fonned *purposse*, and wende hame agayne, and sett the in thi moder knee. And lo, I sende the here a littill balfe, wit þe whilke als a childe þou may play the. For þou ert bot a childe. It es mare semely þat þou vse childerz gammez þan 36 dedez of armes. 'We knawe wele thi pouert and thi nede, and

portrait and he despises him for his short stature.

Darius writes to Alexander, telling him how he has heard of his band of thieves and robbers, and that they could never overcome the power of Persia.

* Leaf 7 bk.

He tells Alexander of his meanness and wretchedness who wishes, like some mouse crept out of her hole when the cat is gone, to dispart him in the broad lands of Persia. But Darius shall pounce upon him when least awaited.

It were a great gift to leave him Macedonia alone, under tribute. He had better go home to his mother's knee. He sends him a play ball as more besecming him.

¹ Four half lines and miniature D with a king's head within.

² At bottom of leaf 7, first side, are

written in large characters indistinctly
... *kychyn ys att a Rio* ...

Does Alexander dream of subduing the rich Empire of Persia. He advises him to return home again or he will send a force to hang him as a thief on a gibbet.

The messengers deliver Alexander the ball and the letters. His knights, hearing it read, are astounded and cast down.

* Leaf 8.

Alexander consoles his men with the hope that what Darius says of the wealth of Persia may be true, and he exhorts them to fight for it manfully.

He bids his knights bind the messengers and lead them forth to be hanged. They lead them forth thus, but the messengers beg for mercy. Alexander tells them why he

þat þou hase vnnethes whare wit þou may sustene thi caytyfde corse. Wenez þou, thañ, to brynge vnder thi subieccioñ the empyre of Darius. I say the by my Fader saule, þat in the rewme of Perse þare es so grete plente of golde, þat, & it were 4 gadirde to gedir on a hepe, It schulde passe þe clerenes of þe soñ. Whare-fore we commande the, and straitely enioyneþ the, þat þou leue thi sole pride and thi vayne glory, & tourne hame agayne to Macedoyne. And if þou wilt noþte soo, we sañ sende 8 to þe a multitude of meñ of armeþ swilke ane saw þou neuer, þe wilke sañ take þe, and hyngþ þe hye oñ a gebett as a traytour and a mayster of theefez: and noþte as þe son of Philippe.'

¹ Wheñ þe messengers þat were sent fra Darius come to 12 king Alexander, þay gaffe hym the *lettres*, and þe. balle & oper certane Iapes, þat þe emperour sent hym in scorne. And Alexander tuke þe *lettres*, and gert rede it openly by-fore alle meñ, and Alexander knyghtes when þay herde þe tenour of þe 16 *lettres* ware gretly astonayde and wonder heuy. And wheñ Alexander sawe þañ so heuy by cause of þe *lettre*, he saide vn-to þam: 'a a, my worthy knyghtis,' quop he, 'are 3e fered þe þe prowde wordeþ þat are contened in Darius *lettres*, wate 3e 20 noghte wele þat hundez, þat berkes* mekill, byteþ meñ noghte so sone, als doeþ hundes þat commez one meñ wit-outten berkyngþ. We trewe wele þe *lettre* says sothe of some thyngþ, þat es to ² saye, of þe grete plentee of golde, þat Darius sais he 24 hase. And þarefore late vs manly feghte wit hym and we sañ hafe þat golde. For þe grete multitude of his golde, als me thyinke, schulde gare vs be balde and hardy for to fighte wit hym manly.' 28

When Alexander had saide thir wordeþ he bade his knyghtis take the messengers of Darius and bynd þaire handez bi-hynde þañ, & lede þañ furthe to the galowes, & hyngþ þañ. And þay tuke þe messengers & bande þañ, and began for to lede 32 þam furthe to þe galowes-warde, and þañ þe messengers bigañ for to crye rewfully vntill Alexander & sayd: 'A, A wirchipfull lorde & kynge', quop þay, 'whate hafe we trespaste, þat we schaff be haungede for oure kynges dedis'. And þañ kyng 36 Alexander ansuerd: 'þe wordeþ of 3our Emperour', quop he, 'gers me do þis, þat sent 3ow vn-to me, as vnto a theeffe, as þe

¹ Five half lines space with a miniature W.

² to in margin of MS.

ettre whilke 3e broghte witnessez': 'A, A lorde', quop þay, will hang them. They promise to make known to Darius Alexander's real character. King Alexander, loos-
 'oure emperour sent¹ thus to 3ou: for 3our powere & 3our myghte was unknawwen vn-till hym. Bot we be-seke 3ow latez 4 vs gaa, and we schall mak aknawen vntill hym 3our grete glory, 3our ryaltee, & 3our noblaye.'

það kyng Alexander badd¹ his knyghtis lowse það, and bryng það in-till his hauffe, to þe mete. And thare he made 8 það a grete feste & a ryall. And as þay satt at the mete, þir messangers saide vn till Alexander, 'lorde,' quop þay, 'if it be plesynge to 3our hye maiestee sendez with vs a thowsand of doghty men of armes, and we sail delyuer það þe 12 Emperour Darius,' and Alexander ansuerde agayne & said² 'Sittes stille', quop he, '& makes 3ow mery. For I tell 3ow in certayne, for þe betrayinge of 3our kyng, I will noghte graunt 3ow a knyghte wit 3ow'. Apon þe morne, 16 Alexander gart write a lettre vn-to Darius, whareoffe þe tenour was this.

þe letter of Alexandere³

⁴ Alexander, the soñ of Philippe & of qwene Olympias, vn-to Darius, kyng of þe land þat schynes⁵ wit þe goddez of Perse, 20 we sende. If we graythely & sothefastly be-halde oure selfe þare es na thyng þat we here hafe þat we may bi righte calle ours, bot all it es lent vs for a tyme. For alle we þat ere whirlede aboute wit þe whele of fortune, now ere we broghte 24 fra reches in-to pouerte: now fra myrthe & ioy in-to Sorowe & heynesse; and agaynwardez: and now fra heghte, we are plunged in-to lawnesse. Þare-fore þare schulde na mañ þat es sett in hye degre triste to mekill in his hyennesse, that, thurgh 28 pride & vayne glorye, he schulde despuse þe dedis of oper men lesse * þan he. For he wate neuer how sone þe whele of fortune may turne abowte, and caste hym doune to lawe degre, þat sitte; hye on-lofte: and rayse hym to hye wirchipe and 32 grete noblaye þat bifore was pore and in lawe degre. And þarefore the aughte to thyнке grete schame, þat swilke a worthy emperour as men haldez the, schulde sende swylke

Alexander, writing, reminds Darius of the unsteadfastness of earthly wealth.

No man of high degree should scorn those lower, for he never knows when the wheel of Fortune may turn about.

* Leaf 8 bk.

Therefore Darius should be ashamed that he, a great

¹ sent in margin of MS.

² & sail in margin.

³ The rubric is wrongly placed in the MS. after dignytez, p. 24, i. e. at the end of

the letter.

⁴ Five half lines with miniature A.

⁵ schynes in margin of MS.

man, behaves so to Alexander, a little man.

The Undying Gods do not associate with men that die.

Alexander comes as a mortal man to fight Darius. Even if Darius overcome

Alexander he shall win nothing by it, for he is but a little man and a thief.

Darius's boasts of the Persians of old have heartened them to attack the Empire.

The play ball that was sent was also a forecast of his rule over the world.

The other toys likewise foretell his rule over all men. By the same, Darius has sent tribute to Alexander.

a message vnto me so littill a mañ and so pore. For þou ert euen lyke to þe sonne, as thi selfe says, sittande in þe trone of Nitas wit þe goddez of Perse. Bot goddez þat euermare are, liffaunde & neuermare dyez, deynez nozte for to hafe þe felas-⁴ chipe of dedely meñ. Sekerly I am a dedely mañ; and to þe I come as to a dedely man, for to feghte wit the. Bot þou þat arte so grete & so gloryous & callez thi selfe vndedely, þou sañ wynne na thyng of me, if alle þou hafe þe ouerhande of me.⁸ For þou hase ouercommen bot a littill mañ, and a theeffe³ als þou sayse. And if I hafe þe ouerhande ouer the, It sañ be to me þe gretteste wirchipe þat euere byfeli me, for als mekill als I sañ hafe þe victorye of þe worthieste emperour of þe werlde. Bot¹² þare þou saide, þat, in þe rewme of Perse, es so grete plentee of golde, þou hase scharpede oure hertiz, and made mare balde for to feghte with the, & for to wynne þat golde; for to relese oure pouerte wit-all, & putte awaye our nede whilke¹⁶ þou says we hafe. In þat also, þat þou sent vs a hande-baſte and oper barne-laykaynes, þou prophicyed rizte, and betakend bi-fore, thynges þat we trewe, thurgh goddez helpe, sañ faſte vn-till vs. By þe rowndenes of þe baſte, we vnderstande²⁰ all the werld aboute vs, þe whilke sañ faſte vnder oure subieccion. Bi þe tane of þe laykanes þat þou sent vs, þe whilke es made of wande; and crukez donwardez; at þe ouerend, we vnderstand þat all þe kynges of þe werlde, and all þe grete lordez,²⁴ sañ lowte till vs. Bi þe toper laykañ, þat es of golde, and hase apon it, as it ware, a mannez hede, we vnderstande þat we sañ hafe þe victorye of all meñ and neuer be ouercommen. And þou þat ert so grete & so myghty hase now onwardez sent²⁸ vs trybute, in als mekeñ als þou sent vs a handbaſte, and þir oper thynges þat I rehersed by-fore, the whilke contenez in þañ so grete dignytez.'

The letter is taken to Darius. He then marches on Persia.

* Leaf 9. Darius, receiving

¹ When þis *lettre* was wreten, Alexander called till þe mes-³² sengers of þe Emperour of Perse, and gaffe þañ riche gyftes and betuke þam þe *lettre*, and badd þañ bere it to þaire lorde. And þañ Alexander sembled his Oste, and by-gañ for to wende towarde Perse. When the messengers of Perse come to þe³⁶ emperour þay talde hym of þe grete ryaltee of kyng Alexander * and tuke hym the letters þat Alexander sent hym. And

¹ Four half lines space with miniature W.

þe emperour garte rede það. And when he herd það redde he was wonder wrathe, and sent a *lettre* belyue vn-till twa grete lordez that hadd þe gouernance of þe empire vnder hym sayand to þam on this wiese.

Alexander's letter, writes to his two great lords,

¹ Darius kyng of kynges and lorde of lordes vntill oure trewe legeþ *Primus* & *Antyocho*s, gretynge and ioy. We here tell þat Alexander, Philippe sonne of Macedoyne, es so beghe raysede in pryde, þat he es rebelle agaynes vs, & es commēd in-till *Asye*, and hase destroyed it vterly. And zitt hym thynke nozte this ynoghe, bot he purposeþ hym for to come nere vs, and do þe same till oþerre cuntreþ of oure empire as he hase done tyll *Asye*. Wharefore we comande zowe o payne of *zour* legeauce, þat ze semle þe grete meñ & þe worthy of oure empyre, wit oþer of our trewe legeþ; and, in all þe haste þat ze may, gase & counters zone childe, takand hym, and bryngand hym bi-fore oure presence, þat we may lasche hym wele, als a wantōd childe schulde be: and clethe hym in *purpoure*; & so send hym till his moder *Olympias* wele chastyede. For it semeþ nozte to be a feghter: but for to vse childe gammeþ.

telling them of Alexander's boldness and bidding them take him prisoner so that Darius may whip him as a naughty child and send him home to his mother.

² Thire twa lordes *Primus* and *Antyocho*s, when þay hadde redde this *lettre* of þe emperour, þay wrate agayne vntill him on this wyse. 'Vn-to Darius, kyng of kynges, grete godd, *Primus* & *Antiocho*s, seruyce þat þay kañ do. To *zour* heghe maieste we make it aknaweñ, þat þe childe *Alexandere*, whilke ze speke off, hase all vterly destroyed *zour* cuntree. And we sembled a grete multytude of folke, and faughte wit hym; bot he hase discomfit vs, and we were fayne for to flee. For unnethe myghte any of vs wynne awaye wit þe lyfe. Þarefore we þat ze say ere helpers vnto zowe, besekeþ *zour* hye maiestee that ze send sunð socoure till vs *zour* trewe leges.' Whē Darius hadde redde þis *lettre*, þare come anoþer messenger till hym and talde hym þat Alexander and his Oste hade lugeð þam appon the water of *Strume*. And whē Darius herd þat he wrate anoþer *lettre* vntill Alexander, of whilke þis was þe tenour.

Primus and *Antiocho*s reply, telling of their utter defeat at the hands of Alexander and begging for help.

Darius is told of the camping of Alexander on the river *Strume*.

³ Darius, kyng of kynges, and lorde of lordez, vn-till oure seruande Alexander. Thorowte all þe werlde þe name of

Darius writes again to

¹ Space for four lines.

² Miniature and M space for four lines.

³ Four half lines and space with a miniature D, with king's head within.

Alexander telling him to retire before his vengeance fall upon him.

* Leaf 9 bk.

He sends him also a token of the number of his own people.

They bring Alexander the letter. But he finds another meaning for the tokens.

He hears of the heavy sickness of his mother. Altho' cast down by the news he writes a letter to Darius. He tells him that for other reasons he is forced unwillingly to return, but bids him not put it

Darius es praysed & commended. Oure goddez also hase it wretē in thaire bukes. How thañ durste þou be so balde, for to passe so many waters, and seez, Mountaynes & craggez, for to werraye agaynes oure royaffe maiestee. A grete wirchīp 4 me thynke it * ware to þe, if þou myghte mawgre oures, hafe in possessioun þe kyngdome of Macedoyne all anely, wit-owtten mare. Thare-fore the es better amend þe of thi mysededis, þan we take swilke wreke appoñ the, þat oþer meñ take bisne þare- 8 by, señ alle þe erthe wit-owtten oure lordchipe, may be callede wedowe. Torne agayne þare-fore, we consaile þe, in-to thyñ awenñ cuntree, are oure wrethe and oure wreke falle apoñ þe. Neuer-þe-lesse, þat oure wirchippe & oure grete noblaye 12 be sumwhate knawē to þe, we sende the a malefull of cheseboffe sede, in takennyng þare-of. Luke if þou may nombir & telle all þir chesseboffe sede, & if þou do þatt þañ may þe folke of oure oste be nowmerd. And if þou 16 may nozte do þat oure folke may nozte be nowmerd. Þare-for turnee hame agayne in-to þi cuntree and lese þi foly þat þou hase byguñ, and take na mare apoñ þe swilke a presumption, for I tell þe we haffe meñ of armes wit-oute 20 nowmmere'.

¹ When þe Messengers of Darius come till Alexander, þay tuk hym þe lettre and þe malefull of chesseboffe sede, Alexander þañ gerte rede þe letter. And sytheñ he putt 24 his hand in þe male, and tuke of þe chesseboffe sede & putt in his mouthe, & chewed it, & said, 'I see wele', quop he, 'þat he hase many meñ, bot þay are rihte softe as this sede are'. In þe mene tyme þare come a Messenger till Alexander fra 28 Macedoyne: and talde hym þat his Moder Olympias was grefe seke. And [when] Alexander herd þis, he was wonder heuy. Neuer þe lesse, he wrate vn to Darius a lettre, þat spakke oñ this wyse. 32

² Alexander þe soñ of Philippe & of qwene Olympias vn-to Darius kyng of Perse, we sende. We do þe wele to wiete þat we hafe herde certane tythynges, whilke gers vs agayne, 36 oure wiñ do þat we now sañ saye. Bot trow þou nozte þat we for fere or dowte of thi pride and þi vayne glorye turne hame agayne now till oure awenñ cuntre, Bot all anely for to vset

¹ Four lines space with miniature W.

² Three lines space.

oure Moder Olympias, whilke lygges grefe seke. Bot wete þou wele, wit in schorte tyme, we schall haste vs agayne, wit a grete nowmere of fresche knyghtis. And riȝte als þou sent vs a
 4 malefull of chessebolle sedeȝ; so we sende þe here a littill peper. For þou schulde witte þat riȝte as þe scharpenes of þis littill peper passeȝ þe multitude of þe chessebolle sedeȝ, riȝte so þe grete multitude of þe Persyenes shall be ouer-comend wit a fewe
 8 knyghtis of Macedoynе.'

¹This lettre be-kende Alexander to þe knyghtis of Darius, þe peper also, & bad þam bere þam to þe emperour. And he gaffe þam grete gyftes and riche, and sent þam furthe.
 12 And þam he turnede * agayne wit his Oste towarde Macedoynе.

There was þe same tyme a wonder wyse mañ of werre þe whilke highte Amorca, and he was prynce-werres in Araby, and lay þare wit a grete multitude of meñ in awayte of
 16 Alexander & his Oste. And wheñ he herde tell of þe commyng of Alexander, he redied hym for to kepe hym. And wheñ þay mett, þay faught to-geder all þe daye fra þe morne till þe eueñ.

And so þay dide all þase thre deyes. And þare was so mekiñ
 20 folke dede in þat bataile, þat þe sone wexe eclipte & wit-drewe his lighte, vggande for to see so mekiñ scheddyngе of blude. Bot at laste þe Percyenes ware so thikke-falde felled to þe grounde, þat paire prynce Amorca turned þe bakke & fledd;
 24 and vnnetheȝ myghte wynñ awaye, and a fewe wit hym. So hastily fledd Amorca, þat he come nerehand alsonе to Darius, as his messagers did þat come fra Alexander, and fand

Darius haldand þe lettre in his hande, þat Alexander sent hymñ,
 28 and spirrande what Alexander did wit þe chessbolle sedeȝ. And þe messagers ansuerd & said: 'He tuke of þe chessbolle sedeȝ', quop þay, 'and chewed of þamñ, & said. I see wele,' quop he, 'þat Darius hase many meñ, bot þay are wonder softe';

32 And than Darius tuk of þe peper, þat Alexander sent, and putt in his mouthe and chewed it. And when he felide þe strenghe of it, and þe grete hete, he syghede sare, and saide: 'Alexander knyghtis', quop he, 'are bot fewe, bot and þay be

36 als strange in þamñ selfe, as þis peper es in it selfe, þay shall fynde nane in þis werlde þat may agaynestande þamñ.' And þan ansuerde Amorca & saide, 'Forsothe, lorde', quop he, '3e

down to his own vainglory or pride. He shall come again with a fresh host. And he sends him in return a little pepper.

He dispatches Darius's messengers back with the letter.
 * Leaf 10, Amorca tries to ambuscade Alexander.

They fought three whole days till the sun grew dark with dread, seeing the number of the slain. So many of the Persians were slain that at last Amorca had to flee. He fled so quickly to Darius that he found him reading Alexander's letter. Darius sighs at the sharpness of the pepper.

¹ Five lines space with miniature A.

say sothe, Alexander hase few knyghtis, bot þay ere strange, þat hase slaen my knyghtis þat ware so many, so þat¹ vnnethez myghte I eschappe owte of þaire handez.' Alexander, if alle² he hade þe victorye of his enemys, he bare hym neuer þe hiere þare-fore, ne empridede hym nozte þare-of. Bot bathe Percyenez & the Macedoyns þat ware slaen, he gert brynge to beryell. And þaen he come wit his Oste in-to Cecill, whare many Citez submyt þaen vn-till hym, and of that rewme, 8 þare went wit hynd: xvij. M. feghtyng meñ. And fra thethyñ he come till Ysaury, þe whilke, wit-owtten any agayne standyng, was 3olden vntill hym. And Alexander went vp apouñ þe Mounte Taurus, and fande þare a citee þat meñ callede 12 Persypolis, and thare he tuk wit hym a certane of meñ of Armes, and went so thurgh Asye, and waen many Citez. And so he come in-to Frigy, and went in-to þe temple of þe soñ, and thare he made sacrafyce to þe soñ. Fra thethyñ, he come 16 to a reuere, þat es called Stamandra, and þare he said till his men. 'Blyste mote 3e be',* quop he, 'þat hase getyñ þe comendacions & þe praysynges of þe gude doctour Homerus', and ane of his meñ ansuerde & said, 'Mi lorde kyng', quop 20 he, 'Me thynke I may sauely writte ma praysynges, & lonynges of the, þaen Homerus did of þaen þat destruyede þe Citee of Trayane. For þou hase done in þi tyme ma wirchipfull thynge3, þaen euer did þay.' And Alexander [ansuerd,] & said, 24 'Me ware leuer,' quop he, 'be a wyse manes disciple þan for to hafe þe lonynges of Achilles.' After this he remouede wit his Oste into Macedoynne, & fande his Modir Olympias wele couerd of hir sekene3, and suggournede þare wit her a while. 28 And thaen he ordeyned hym for to wende agayne into Persy, And keste hym for to logge at a Citee, þat meñ calle3 Abandryaen. The meñ of þe Citee, when þay herde telle of his commyng, þay spered þe 3ates of þe Citee, and wachede þe citee 32 one ilke a syde. And when Alexander saw þat, he went & assailede þe Citee. And þe burge3 of þe Citee, when þay sawe þat þe citee was nozte strange ynoghe of þe selfe, for to agaynstande þe assawte of þaire enemys, þay criede till 36 Alexander & saide: 'Kyng Alexander,' quop þay, 'we spered

Alexander's humility and courtesy to his fallen foes.

His further march.

Alexander sacrifices to the Sun in Phrygia.

* Leaf 10 bk.

Alexander answers a flatterer, he had rather be a wise man's disciple than have the praises of Achilles.

Alexander marches again towards Persia.

The citizens of Abandria shut their gates against him. But

¹ 'þat' almost blotted out by stain in MS.

² 'alle' almost blotted out by same stain as above.

noȝte þe ȝates of [the] citee to þat entent for to agaynstande
 the, Bot allanly for þe drede of Darius, kyng of Perse, þe
 whilke as it was tolde till vs, es purpossede for to send' his
 4 meñ hedir, for to destruye vs & oure citee.' And það Alexander
 said' vnto það agayñ. 'Iffe ȝe wilt,' quop he, 'þat we distruy
 ȝow noghte, openeȝ ȝour ȝates, and wheñ I hafe made an ende
 wit Darius, það sañ I come agayne, & speke wit ȝowe.' And
 8 það þe Citazenes openeð þe ȝates. Fra thetheñ þay went to
 Commoliehe. And fra thethyñ to Bihoy, and so to Caldiple.
 Syne þay come¹ till a grete reuere, whare Alexander Oste hadd'
 grete defaute of vetails, and það his knyghtis murnede gretely
 12 and said', 'Oure horses,' quop þay, 'fayleȝ vs ay mare & mare.'
 Alexander ansuerd', & said', 'A A, my doghty knyghtis,' quop
 he, 'þat ȝitt heder-towardeȝ hase in werreȝ suffred' many
 perills & mekilt disesse, ere ȝe nowe in despeyre of ȝour hele
 16 for þe failynge of ȝour horseȝ, Sañ we noȝte gete horseȝ ynowe,
 and we lyffe & hafe qwert, and if we dye we sañ hafe na nede
 of horse, na þay may do us na prophete. Haste we vs þarefore
 in all þat we maye to þe place whare² we sañ gete horseȝ wit-
 20 owttedñ nowmer, and vetails also, bathe for oure selfe & for oure
 horseȝ.' Wheñ he hadd' all saide, þay went furthe and come till
 a place þat es called Luctus, þat es to saye wepynge,*³ whar þay
 fande vetails ynoghe, and mete ynoghe for þaire horse. Fra
 24 thethyñ þay remoued' & come till a place þat hatt Trigagantes,
 and þare þay lugeð það. And Alexander went in-to a temple
 of Apollo; whare als he aghteled' to hafe made Sacrafice, and
 hafe hadd' ansuere of that godd' of certane thynges þat he walde
 28 hafe aschede. Bot a woman þat hizte ȝacora, whilke was preste
 of þat temple, talde Alexander þat það was noȝte þe tyme of
 ansuere. On þe Morne Alexander come to þe temple & made
 his sacrafice. And Apollo said' till Alexander, 'Hercules,'
 32 quop he. And Alexander ansuered', & said', 'Now þat þou
 calleȝ me Hercules,' quop he: 'I see wele þat all thyñ ansuers
 ere false.' Fra thethyñ Alexander went till a citee þat es called'
 'Thebea, and said vn-to þe folke of þe citee: 'Sendeȝ me furthe,'
 36 quop he, 'foure hundreth knyghtis, wele armed', for to wend wit

fearing
 him they
 tell him
 that they
 had done
 so to with-
 stand Da-
 rius. And
 they open
 their gates.

Alexander's
 knights
 complain
 that their
 horses are
 failing
 them.
 Alexander
 exhorts
 them to
 endure to
 the end.

* Leaf 11.

Alexander
 gets a lying
 answer of
 Apollo,
 who calls
 him Her-
 cules.

Alexander
 calls on
 the The-
 beans to

¹ MS. *went* crossed through by the scribe, and replaced by *come* in MS. itself.

² *whare* corrected from *þare* in MS.

³ On leaf 11 a more regular, orderly, and distinctive handwriting begins in the MS.

send him help. But they, refusing, shut their gates.

Alexander jeers at them.

He sends four thousand archers to shoot down the watches on the wall, two hundred miners to mine the walls, a hundred to burn down the gates, and four hundred engineers to batter the walls in. Himself with the rest lay by to help them when necessary.

The story of Cicesterus and Hismon.

* Leaf 11 bk.

Alexander refuses mercy to the city, and raises it to the earth. Clitomarus, one of the citizens, fares away with the conquerors. The Thebeans ask

vs in suppoellyng of vs.' And when þe Thebeans herd thir wordez, þay spereð þe zates of þe citee, for to agayne-stande Alexander, and went to þe walles, and cried lowde þat Alexander myghte here: 'Alexander,' quop þay, 'bot if [þou] gaa hethyð fra vs, we 4
sall do the a velany, & thi knyghtis also.' When Alexander herde this, he smyled & saide: '3e Thebeens,' quop he, 'þat ere so mekill prayed & commended of strenghe, Spere 3e 3our zates 8
& saise 3e will feghte wit me; þare es na doghety mañ of armez 8 þat couctez for to haue wirechip and loos; þat will close hynd witin walles, bot fightes wit his enemys manly in þe felde.' When he hadd saide thir wordez, he bad þat foure thowsandez archers sulde gaa abowte þe citee wit paire bowes, & lay apou 12
þaund wit arowes þat stode apou þe walles. And he bad two hundreth meñ of armes ga to þe walles, and myne þaund doune, and a hundrethe he bad take fyrebrandez, & gaa to þe zates & brynne þaund. And he ordeynde oper foure hundreth meñ, 16
for to bett dound þe walles wit Sewes of werre, Engynes and Gonnes & oper maner of Instrumentez of werre. And hym selfe, and þe remenant of þe oste lay nere þaund to socour þaund when þay hadd nede. And belyfe fra þay hadd gyffen assawte to þe 20
citee, þe zates ware brynt, & mekill folke was slayne witin þe citee, Sum witi arowes, sum witi stanes of Engynes; þe Fire also by-gaund for to sett in housez witi-in þe citee, & rayse a grete lowe. In þe Oste of Alexander was, þe same tyme, a mañ þe 24
whilke highte Cicesterus, a grete enemy to þe citee. He, when he sawe þe citee bryne, made righte mery.* Bot a mañ of the citee þat highte Hismon, when he saw his cuntree þusgates be distruyed, come and felle one knees be-fore Alexander; and 28
bigaund for to syuge a sange of Musyke & of murnyge witi an Instrument of Musike, Supposyng þare-by for to drawe Alexanders herte to Mercy, & styrre hym to hafe rewthe on þe citee. Alexander be-helde hym, & sayde: 'Maister,' quop he, 'whare- 32
to synges þou me þis sange?' 'A A lorde,' quop Hismon, 'to luke 3ife I myzte styrre þi herte to hafe mercy ou þe citee.' And þaund Alexander was wonder wrathe, and bad dynges þe walles of þe cetee dound to þe harde erthe. And when þay had so done 36
þay remoued & went þaire way, and ane of þe worthieste meñ of þe citee, þe whilke hyghte Clitomarus, went witi þaund in company. Bot þe Thebeens þat ware lefte aftire þe birnynges

of þe citee went to þe temple of Apollo, and askede weþer euer
 mare þaire citee sulde be repaireld agayne. Apollo ansuerde,
 & said, 'he þat schaff bygge þis citee agayne sall hafe thre
 4 victories. And when he hase geteð thre victories, he sall
 ouane come & repareð this citee, and bigge it agayne, also
 wele, als euer it was.'

¹ Alexander fra þe citee of Thebe, went to Corynthe, and þare
 8 come tið hym certane lordes, prayand hym þat he walde come
 & see a wrestillynge. And he graunted það. And to þis Ilke
 wrestillynge þare come folke witowtten nowmer. And when
 all með were gadirde, Alexander saide: 'whilk of 3owe,' quop
 12 he, 'sall gaa & be-gynð þis playe'. Clitomarus það, of whyamð
 I spake bifore, knelið bi-fore þe kyng, & saide: 'lorde,' quop
 he, '& 3e wolle vouche-saffe to giffie me leue, I wið be-gynð.'
 And Alexander bad hym ga to. And Clitomarus went in-to þe
 16 place, and þe firste mað þat come in his hande, at the first
 tourne he threwe hym wide opeð. And Alexander said vntið
 hym: 'Caste thre með,' quop he, '& þou sall be coround'.
 Það þare come anoþer mað to Clitomarus and vnethez he come
 20 in his handez, when he was casteð wyde open. And one þe
 same wyse he seruede þe thirde. And þan Alexander gart sett
 oð his heuede a precious coround, and þe kynges seruandez
 spirrede hym what his name was. 'My name,' quop he, 'es wit
 24 owtteð citee'. When Alexander herde þat he saide vn-tið
 hym: 'Thou noble wristiller,' quop he, 'whi arte þou callede wit
 owtteð citee.' 'Wirchipsull emperour,' quop he, 'be-fore þat 3e
 werede þe emperours Dyademe, I hadde a citee full of folkez
 28 & of reches. Bot now, sene 3e come to this astate & þis
 dignytee, I am spoylede & priuede of my citee.' And when
 [he] herde this, he wiste wele þat he ment of þe citee of
 Thebe. And þan he garte his sergeantez* make a crye that
 32 [he] hadd giffen Clitomarus leue for to repairelle þe citee
 of Thebes. Fra Corinthe, Alexander and his oste remowed tið
 a citee þat highte Platea, of þe whilke a mað þat highte Scras-
 geras was prynce. And Alexander went to þe temple of Diane,
 36 and fande þare a womað preste, þe whilke was a maydeð, & scho
 was araied lyke prestez of þat tymme. And when [scho] sawe
 Alexander, scho saide vn-tið hyn: 'Alexander,' quop scho, 'þou

an oracle of
 Apollo as to
 whether
 their city
 should ever
 be rebuilt.
 The answer
 is, it shall
 be rebuilt
 by a three-
 fold victor.
 Alexander
 is invited
 to a wrest-
 ling.
 He asks
 who will
 begin.

Clitomarus
 begs the
 favour of
 so doing.

He wins
 once.
 Alexan-
 der's pro-
 mise.
 He wins
 twice.
 He wins
 thrice.
 Crowning
 him they
 ask him
 his name.
 He
 answers,
 'One with-
 out City.'
 How it be-
 fell with
 his answer.

* Leaf 12.

From
 Corinthe
 they go to
 Platea and
 the Tem-
 ple of
 Diana.
 The maid-
 en Priestess

¹ Five half lines space with miniature A, with knight within.

and her
prophecy.

Scras-
sageras
curses the
priestess,
but it
avails him
nothing.

He falls
from his
Lordship
and flees to
Athens, and
prevails on
them to
help him.

Alexander
marches on
Athens.

The letter
of Alex-
ander to
the Athe-
nians, tell-
ing of his
deeds and
conquests.

He asks of
them but
ten philo-

arte welcomme. Pou schaff conquere aff þe werlde.' One þe morne Sc rassageras went to þe same temple, and alsone als þe preste sawe hym, scho saide vn-till hym: ' Sc rassageras,' quop scho, ' what thou wit-in a schorte while þou schaff be priued' of 4 þe lordchip þat þou now hase?' And when he herde þis he was righte wrathe wit hir, & saide, ' þou arte nozte worthy,' quop he, ' for to be preste here. Alexander come to þe zisterdaye, and þou prophicyed hym gude; And to me þou sais, þat I schaff lose aff 8 my lordechipe.' And scho ansuerd, & saide, ' Beez nozte angry to me,' quop scho: ' for aff þis buse be fulfilled, and nathyng e þare of leste ne ouerhippede.' A littill after it felle þat Alexander was gretely angrede at Sc rassageras, and tuke fra 12 hym his lordchipe, & Sc rassageras went to þe cite of Athenez, and sare wepande he complenede hym to þe citazenes of Athenez & talde þaũ how þat Alexander hadd priued hym of his lordechipe. And þaũ þe Atheneanes ware wonder [wrathe] towards 16 Alexander, and made grete boste & manace, þat þay schold ryse agaynes hym, bot if he restorede Sc rassageras agayne till his lordechipe. Alexander remowed his Oste fra Platea to þe citee of Athenes, and when [he] herde telle þat þe Athenens ware 20 wrathe till hym-warde, and manaced hym, he wrate vn-to þaũ a lettre þat spak one this wyse.

' Alexander, þe son of Philippe and of qwene Olympias, vn to the Athenenes, gretynge. Fra þe tyme þat oure Fadir was 24 dedde, & we were sett in þe Trone of his dingnytee, we went into þe weste Marches, whare aff þe folkez þat duellez thare for þe maste party zalde þaũ vn-till vs wit-owtten stresse. Fra þe citee of Rome to þe weste see occyane, aff meũ sub- 28 mytte þaũ vn-till vs þat wit oure awen fre will we hafe taken þaũ 2 till oure grace. And thase þat walde nozte submytt þaũ till vs wit fairenes, we hafe distruyed³ þaũ & paire citez, and doungeũ þaũ dowũ to þe erthe. And now þis oper 32 daye as we went fra Macedoyne & passed thurgħ Asye: bi þe cite of Thebe, þe Thebeyens despysed vs, & lete as þay sett nozte by vs. Bot onane we garte þair pryde fatte, and de-

¹ Four half lines space with minia-
ture A.

² Here the scribe first has written 'to
grace' and then erased it, substituting as

in text.

³ The *uy* in *distruyed* has been substi-
tuted for *uu* by the same scribe.

strued^d bathe þa^m & thaire citee. And þare-fore we write vn-to 3ow; that 3e seude vs teⁿ philosophres þat be wyse, * by þe whilke we may be encensed and conselled. For oper thyng
 4 wif we nane aske 3ow, Bot alle anely þat þe halde vs for 3our lorde & 3our kyng. And 3if 3e wif no3te submytt 3owe vn-till vs, 3ow buse oper be strangere þa^m we, or elfs submytt yow to sum lordechip, þat be strangere þa^m oures.¹

8 ¹The Athenyenes redd^d þis lettre and þan þay bigan to crye one highte. And ane, þat highte Eschiffe, stode vp amange3 þa^m, and said: 'It es fully my conseil^l, quop he, 'þat we oⁿ na wise assent [to thise] worde3 of Alexander.' Alle þe folke þa^m
 12 þat was gadirde þare, prayed þe philosophre Demostines, þat he walde tell þa^m his conselle, as touchyng þat matere. And he stude vp, & bad^d all meⁿ be still. And þa^m he said vn-to þa^m. 'Sirs,' quop he, 'I pray 3ow takes tent vn-to my worde3 &
 16 herkenes gudly what I saif say. If 3e fele 3ow of power, for till agayne-stande Alexander, & to surprise hym, þa^m feghtes wit hym manly, and obeys no3te till his worde3. And if 3e suppose 3e be no3te strange ynoghe to feghte wit hym þan
 20 here3 hym, and obeys vn-till hym. 3e knawe wele, þat als oure eldirs telles vs, 3erses was a grett kyng, & a myghty, and many victories he gatt. And neuer þe lesse in Ellada he suffrede grete meschefe. Bot he, this Alexander, hase done
 24 many batailles, in þe whilke he suffrede neuer disese bot alwaye had þe ouerhande. Þe Thirienes, I pray 3ow, ware [þai] no3te balde knyghtes and strange, and all þaire lyfe hade bene excercysede in Armes? And whate profitede þa^m þaire strenghe?
 28 Þe Thebienes also þat were so wyse, and so grete exercyse hadde in armes, fra þe firste tyme þat þe citee was bygged, whare-off seruede þaire grete witt þa^m, and þaire grete strength, when Alexander assailede þa^m? Þe Poliponiens faghte wit Alexander,
 32 bot þay myghte na while agayne-stande his men of armes. Bot alsoⁿ þaire² ware disconfit and slaen. It es no3te vnknawen vn-to 3owe, how many citee3 castells & towne3 for fere submittis þa^m vn-till hym wit-owtten any assawte gyffyng. Þarefore,
 36 it es no3te my consaile þat 3e be heuy, ne wrathe till Alexander

sophers to teach him * Leaf 12 bk.

rendering homage to him; or else must it either be stronger than Alexander or dependent on some stronger state.

The speech of Aeschylus against Alexander. The Athenians beg counsel of Demosthenes. He tells them if they feel themselves strong enough to resist, but if not then let them submit.

He compares Alexander and Xerxes together.

He narrates Alexander's victorious campaign.

He advises them not to be froward towards Alexander.

¹ Four half lines space with miniature T.

² MS. reads 'þaire' for þay. This form

recurs on p. 55, l. 29. Cf. Icelandic þeir. There is nothing left out nor is it a misprint.

Alexander is a wise and reasonable man, neither would he have put Scraſſageras out of his Lordſhip except for treaſon againſt him.

The Athenians commend this

* Leaf 13.

counsel greatly and ſent tribute but no philoſophers.

He hears of the ſpeeches of both Aechylus and Demotheſenes.

He writes them a letter.

The Letter of Alexander to the Athenians.

He had purpoſed a philoſophic diſpute with them, and have ſhown them his friends.

But their deeds ſhewed otherwiſe. Whoſo

of them riſes againſt him, he will make an example of. They, as knaves, think ill and fear ill.

He had put S. out of office for treaſon. They have deſpiſed his demand for ten philoſophers.

for Scraſſageras. For all men knowes wele þat Alexander es a wonder wyſe mañ & a warre, & a mañ þat gouernes hym by reſon; and þare-fore 3e may wele wete, he walde nozte putt Scraſſageras oute of his lordechipe upon leſſe þañ forfeit vn-4 till hym.' When þe Athenyenes had herde þir wordez, þay commedid gretly the conſeille of Demostines, and than they ordeyned a corouñ of golde þe weghte of .i. pounde, and ſent Meſſangers þarewit, and wit tribute vn-till Alexander, bot 8 philoſophres ſent þay naue. * And when þire Meſſangers come till Alexander, þay gaſſe hym þe corouñ, and þe tribute, þat þe Athenyenes ſent hym, and talde hym þat þay had highte hym a grete nowmer of catelle. And when Alexander had herd þam, 12 he vnderſtode wele þe conceit of Eſchilus þat conceit þe Athenyenes to agayneſtand hym, and alſo þe conceit of Demostenes that conceit þañ þe contrary, and þañ he wrote a lettre to þañ where-of the Tenoure was this. 16

¹ 'Alexander þe ſon of Philippe and quene Olympias, for þe name of kynge wiſt we nozte take apon vs, before we haſe oure enemys vnder oure ſubiencion: vn-to þe Athenyenes gretyng. It es nozte oure entent to come in 3our citee wit oure oſte, 20 Bot allanly to come & diſpuyte wit 3our philoſophres, and to aſche þañ certane queſtyons, Oure purpoſſe was alſo to haſe declared for oure trewe leggez & oure gude Frendez. Bot 3our dedez proues þe contrary, as it ² done vs till vnderſtande. Oure 24 goddez we take to witneſſe, þat whilke of 3ow ſo ryſez agayne 3 vs, we ſaill take ſwilke wreke apoñ hym þat oþer meñ ſaill take enſample þare-by. Bot 3e als ſchrewes, and euyll men, euer mare trowez ill, and thynkes ill. Wate 3e nozte wele þat 28 þe Thebienes þat riſe agaynes vs, hadd þaire mede als þay diſſerued. And 3e haſſand in vs a wrange conſayte, blame 3 vs, For we putt Scraſſageras owte of his Office the whilke ³ forfeit gretly agaynes oure maieste. We ſent vn-to 3ow bi 32 lettre for teñ philoſophres, bot 3e, nozte knowande oure grete powere & oure myghte, deſpysed oure maundement and walde nozte fulfill it. Neuer þe les if all 3e haſe offendid agaynes

¹ Four half lines with miniature A.

² The reader muſt probably here ſupply 'haſe' between 'as it' and 'us till vnderſtande', but as it occurs ſeveral times it

may be a ſyntactical peculiarity.

³ The reader muſt probably ſupply *was* or *deide* between *þe whilke* and *forſett*, but ſee previous notice.

vs whider-towarde and beine disobeyande till oure maiestee, we forgiffe 3ow all 3our gilt, and þe greuance þat 3e hafe don vs, so þat 3e be obeyande vn-till vs, fra þis tyme forwarde. Com-
 4 forthes 3ow þarefore & bee3 mery, for of vs 3e schaff hafe na greuance ne na disesse be-cause 3e did after þe conceit of Demostynes.'

¹ When þe Athenyenes herd þis *lettre* redd, þay ware rizte
 8 gladd, and þam Alexander & his Oste went fra thethynd vn-to Lacedoyne. Bot þe Lacedouns walde one na wyse obey vn-till Alexander, bot said ilkan of þam till oper, 'latt vs nozte be lykke þe Athenyenes,' quop þay, 'þat drede þe manaschyng, and þe boste of Alexander bot late vs schewe oure myzte, and oure strenghe and manly defende *oure citee agayne3 hym.'
 12 When þay hadd saide, þay spereð þe 3ates of þe cetee faste, and went manly to þe walles. And a grete nowmer of þam
 16 tuke þam schippe3 & went to þe see, a grete nauy, to feghte wit Alexander are he come to lande. And when Alexander saw this, he sent a *lettre* to þam sayand on this wyse.

² 'Alexander þe son of Philippe and of þe queene Olympias vn-to þe Lacedounes we sende. We conceit 3ow, þat þat, that 3our elders hase lefte 3ow, 3e kepe hale & sound & in sauete³ and lyfte3 nozte 3our hende ouer hie to þe thynges þat þe may nozte reche to. And if 3e desire for to hafe ioy of 3our strenthe,
 24 dose swa þat 3e be worthy to hafe wirchipe of vs. Þarefore we comande 3ow, þat 3e turne agayne wit 3our schippe3, and leue3 þam, & gase to lande by 3our awennd fre wilt; or sekirly I sall sett fire in tham & brynne þam. And if 3ee dispice oure
 28 commandement, blame3 na mað bot 3our selfe, if we wreke vs one 3owe.'

⁴ The Lacedounes redd þis *lettre*, and when it was redd, þay ware wonder heuy. Nozte for-thi þay redied þam to feghte.
 32 Bot Alexander arryued in an oper coste, and come to þe citee are þay wiste and vmbylapped þe citee one ilke a syde, and assailede it strangly & dange þe Lacedouns of þe walles & slewe many of þam & wounded many, and sett fyre in þaire
 36 schippe3 & brynt þam. Þe remanant of þam þat ware lefte

Nevertheless he will forgive them if they be good for the future, since they followed Demosthenes' advice.

Alexander goes thence into Lacedemonia. But they would in no wise submit to

* Leaf 13 bk.

him. But despising him the Athenians manned the walls. Yet others of them fled over-seas, and others went to meet him in fight.

The Letter of Alexander to the Lacedemonians bidding them return and submit.

Alexander arrives by an unforeseen way and surrounds them.

He attacks the city

¹ Three lines space miniature W.

² Four half lines with miniature A.

³ MS. *sautee* with *u* written over

another letter.

⁴ Four lines space with miniature T.

fiercely till they surrender.

Alexander tells them they would not receive him peacefully. therefore are they come to this great harm.

Alexander reproaches them with overgreat conceit and quotes a homely proverb.

* Leaf 14.

They thought in vain to have done to him as their forefathers did to King Xerxes.

Darius hears of the coming of Alexander. He is greatly terrified and holds a council.

The speech of Darius. He bewails that he has under-rated him, and sees that they must now look to their safety. He fears that God's Foresight helps Alexander so that he may eventually conquer Persia.

He fears that God's Foresight helps Alexander so that he may eventually conquer Persia.

appon lyfe, when þay saw this grete meschefe come owte of þe citee vn-till Alexander, & fette douñ at his fete, & besoughte hym of mercy & of grace. And Alexander ansuerd, 'I come to þow,' quop he, 'meke & mylde, bot in þat degre ze walde nozte 4
ressayffe me, þarefore now are þour schippeþ brynned, and þour citee distruyed, & þour folkez slayne. Warned I nozte be-fore þat ze schulde nozte heue þour handez ouer-hye to þe sternes, to þe whilke nane erthely mañ may wynñ. For wha so euer 8
clymbez hier, þañ his fete may wynñ to sunñ halde, he sañ falle onane douñ to þe grounde. And þarefore es þare a com-mone prouerbe: þat "wha sa hewes to hie, þe chippes wiñ falle in his egh." Ze wende hafe done till vs as þour eldir's 12
didde sumetyme till kynge zerses, bot þour wenyng dessayued þow. For ze myghte nozte agayne-stande vs when we assaillede þow.' Whan * he hadd saide on this wise, he gaffe þañ leue to gaa whare þay walde. And thañ he remouede thethyñ & went 16
to-warde Cicill. And when þe emperour Darius herd tell of þe comyng of Alexander, he was gretly abaiste and sent after añ his princeþ, Dukes & Erles, & oþer grete lordes, & went till a consaile. And he saide vn-to þañ, 'I see wele,' quop he, 'þat 20
he, this Alexander, þat gase thus abowte werrayand, waxez gretly in wirchipe, and ay-whare whare he commez he hase þe victory. I wende he hadd bene a theeffe & a robbour, þat hadde went till cuntrez þat ere wayke & feble, and durst nozte agayne- 24
stande hym, & robbed þañ & spoyled þañ. Bot now, I see wele, he es a doghty mañ of Armes, & a noble werrayour. And ay þe mare þat I hafe depraued hym and despysed hym; þe mare rysez his name, & his wirchipe. I sent hym a balle, a toppe, 28
& a scourge, for to lere barne-laykes; bot hym þat I called a disciple, he semeþ a mayster & whare-so-euer he gase, Fortune gase wit hym. Pare-fore vs byhoneþ to trete of oure hele, & of oure popleþ, and pute awaye añ pride & añ foly: & 32
namare despisse Alexander, saynge þat he es noghte, by cause we are emperour of Perse. For his littillnes waxes and oure gretnes decresseþ. I hafe grete dowte, þat goddez forluke helpez hym, so þat whils we ere abowte, & wenez to putte hym 36
out of Ellada, we be spoyled, by hym, of þe rewme of Perse.'

¹ When Darius hadd said thir wordez, his broder Coriather

¹ Four lines.

ansuerd̄, & said̄, 'þou hase here,' quop̄ he, 'gretly magnified̄ & commendid̄ Alexander, in that, þat þou sais he es mare feruent for to come in-to Perse, þaīd̄ we in-till Ellada. And þarefore
 4 if it be plesyng vn-to 3our maiestee, vse 3e þe maners of Alexander, and so sail̄ [3e] wele & peysably welde 3our empire & conquere many oþer rewmes. Alexander, when̄ he gase to bataile and sail̄ feghte, he lates [nane] of his pryncez ne his
 8 oþer lordez gaa be-fore, &¹ hym selfe come by-hynde, bot he gase bi-fore þaīd̄ alle, and so risez his wirchip̄ & his name.'

Quod̄ Darius, 'wheþer awe me to take sa ensample at
 12 Alexander, or Alexander at me.' A prynce ansuerde & saide, 'Alexander,' quod̄ he, 'es a warrer² maīd̄ & a wyse, & hase trespaste in na degree & þarefore he duse manly by hym selfe all̄ þat he doez. For he hase taken þe fourme of þe lyonīd̄.'
 16 'Whare-by knawes þou þat,' quop̄ Darius, * and he ansuerd̄, & saide, 'whate tyme,' quop̄ he, 'þat I was sent to Macedoyne for til aske tribute of kyng Philippe, I saw, bi his Figure & his wise ansuere, þat he schuld be a passyng maīd̄, bathe of witt,
 20 & of doynge. Thare-fore, if it be plesyng vn-to 3ow, I conseñ þat 3e sende till all̄ þe landez & cuntrez þat langez to 3our empire, þat es to say to Parthy & Medy, Appollamy, Mesopotamy, Ytaly, Bactri, and till all̄ þe remenant for þay ere
 24 subietez vn-to 3ow a hundreth: c. and fifty l. of dyuerse³ folke. To þe lordes of⁴ all thire, I rede 3e sende commandyng þaīd̄, þat þay come to 3ow, in all̄ þe haste þat þay may, with all̄ þe meīd̄ þat þay may gett whilk ere able to ga to werre⁵. And when̄
 28 þay [ere] all̄ sembled̄ to gedir late vs beske oure goddis of helpe. And þaīd̄ Alexander when̄ he seez swilk a multitude of folke agaynes hym, his hert sail̄ faile hym, and his mens also. And owþer he sail̄ for fere turne hame agayne till his
 32 aweīd̄ cuntree, or ell̄s submytt hym vn-to 3ow.' And þaīd̄ ansuerd̄ anoþer prynce, & sayde, 'This es a gud conceñ,' quop̄ he, 'bot it es nozte profitable. Wate þou nozte wele þat a wolfe

Darius' brother advises him to lead his own men in the van as Alexander does.

Darius demurs.

A prince tells him of the person of Alexander, and

*Leaf 14 bk.

advises him to gather a tremendous force that Alexander's heart may fail him.

The counsel is commended but for the

¹ & is written in above the line in the MS. by the same scribe.

² Perhaps the abbreviation is here really a mere flourish, and we should read *warr*, though the contraction mark is well made.

³ In MS. *deverse* was at first written,

and *y* substituted by the same scribe.

⁴ *af* written and crossed out between *lordes* and *of*.

⁵ *were* at first written and changed to *werre* by the scribe.

cowardice
of the
Persians
and the
wisdom of
the Greeks.
Alexander
gathers his
host. He
bathes in a
cold river
and gets a
fever, to
the great
alarm of
his army.

chase; a grete floke of schepe & gerse þaṁ sparple. Righte so,
and þe wysdome of þe grekes passe; oþer nacyons.'

¹ In this mene tyme, Alexander semberd a gret multitude of
folkez to þe nowmer of cc of feghtyng men, and remewed to
warde Perse, & come tilf a reuere þat es called Mociona, of
whilke þe water was wonder calde, & faire, & clere. And
Alexander hadd a grete lyste for to be bathede þare-in, and went
in-to it & bathed hym, & waschede hym þare-in, and also soṁ
he felle in a feuer and a heued-werke þare-wit, so þat he fure
wonder itt. And when þe Macedoyns saw þaire lorde so grefe
seke, þay were wonder heuy and reghte dredand, and said
amanges selfe: 'And Darius,' quod þay, 'wete þat oure lorde

Alexander
summons
Philip his
Physician.
* Leaf 15.

Alexander he þus seke, he sail come & falle apoṁ vs sodaynly,
& fordo vs ilkan. For, and we hadd þe hele of oure lorde
Alexander, we hadd comforth ynoghe & dredde no nacyon.'

Than kyng Alexander called tilf hym his Phicisiene þat
highte Philippe & badd hym ordeyne hym a Medeyne for his
sekenes. Þis ilk Phicisiene was ² * bot a 3ong maṁ, bot he was
a passyng kunnyng maṁ and a soteṁ in all þe poyntes þat
langed to phisic. And he highte Alexander, þat [by] a certane
drynke he sulde onane make hym all hale. Nowe fell it, þat
was wit Alexander a prynce, þat highte Parmenius & was
lorde of hermony. This prynce hade grete envy to þis
phicisiene, bi-cause þat Alexander luffede hym so passandly
wele & belyfe he wrate tilf Alexander, and warned hym þat
he schulde be warre wit Phillippe his phicisiene, and on na wyse
resayfe þat drynke þat he walde gyffe hym. For he said, þat
Darius had highte to giffe hym his doghter to wyffe & his
kyngdom after his dissesse if swa ware, þat he myghte be any
crafte make ane ende of hym. When Alexander hadde redd
þis lettre he was na thyng trubbed, so mekill he tristede of
þe conscience of his phisician.

But an-
other Lord
is jealous
of him
and warns
Alexander
that Phillip
would
poison
him being
in Darius'
pay.

The Physi-
cian comes
to Alex-
ander.

In þe mene tyme, þis Physician come tilf Alexander wit þe
forsaid drynke, and Alexander tuk þis drynke in a hande & þe
forsaid lettre in his oþer hande and biheld þe Physician in
þe vesage rihte scharpely. To whome þe Physician saide: 36

¹ Five lines space with miniature I.

² At bottom of leaf 14 obv. is written 'ff (fecit?) Sever. Scr.'

‘wirchipfull Emperour,’ quop he, ‘be na thyng fered bot drynke
 þe medecyne baldely,’ and þaïd onane Alexander tuk this drynke,
 & schewed Philippe þe *lettre*. And when Philippe had redde
 4 þe *lettre*, he said tiff Alexander: ‘Now for sothe, my lorde,’
 quop he, ‘I take oure goddes to witnessse þat I ne am noȝte
 giltly of this treson, þat here es wretyn.’ Alexander þaïd was
 all hale als ener he was, & called vn-tiff Philyppe his phisician
 8 & embraced hym in his armes & said: ‘Philippe,’ quop he,
 ‘knaues þou how mekill luffe & triste I hafe in the. Firste
 I dranke thi medecyne, & syne I schewede þe þe *lettre* þat
 was sent me agaynes the.’ ‘Mi lorde,’ quop Philippe, ‘I be-
 12 seke ȝow þat ȝe wolle vochesaffe to send after myd accusour,
 and do hym come bi-fore ȝour presence þat þis *lettre* sent vn-to
 ȝow, and hase lered me for to do¹ swilk a hie treson. Be-lyfe
 þaïd gerte Alexander send after Parmeny for to come vn-tiff
 16 hym, and gerte þe sothe be serched, & fande þat he was worthy
 þe dede. And þaïd he gert girde of his heued.

² Fra þeine kyng Alexander remowed his Oste tiff hermony þe
 mare & onane he conquered it, & put it vnder his subieccioin.
 20 And fra þeine he trauailed many a day *wit his Oste, and at þe
 laste come tiff a cuntre wonder drye, & full of creuesceȝ of
 cauernes, & alde cisternes whare na water myghte be fundeïd.
 And Fra þeine þay passede thurgh a cuntree, þat es called
 24 Andrias, to þe Renere of Eufrates. And þare þay lugede þaïd.
 Þan Alexander garte brynge many grete treeȝ, for to make
 a brygge of ouer þat water, appon schippeȝ, and garte tye þaïd
 Samedï wit chenys of Ireïd & ireïd nayleȝ. And when þe brigge
 28 was all redy, he badde his knyghtes wende ouer apon it. Bot
 when þay saw þe grete reuer ryne so swiftly and with so
 a grete a byrre, thay dred þaïd þat þe brygge schulde falle.
 For þay supposede þe chenys schuld breke be-cause of grete
 32 weghte. And, when Alexander saw þaïd dredand on this
 wyse, he gert hirde-men, þat were þare kepanð katell, wend
 ouer before, and warnede þat þe Oste schulde folowe þaïd.
 Bot ȝit þe knyghtis ware ferde & durste noghte wende ouer.
 36 Thaïd was Alexander riȝte wrathe and callede vntiff hym all
 his prynces, & grete lordeȝ, and frote he went hym selfe ouer

Alexander
 takes the
 drink given
 him, and
 shows the
 Physician
 the letter.

Alexander
 declares to
 him his
 great trust.

The trial of
 the accuser.

Alexander
 conquers
 Armenia

* Leaf 15
 bk.
 the Greater
 and
 marches
 through
 deserts to
 the Eu-
 phrates.
 He builds a
 bridge of
 boats and
 logs, but
 his knights
 fear to cross
 it because
 of the
 fierceness
 of the
 current.
 Alexander
 sends
 herdsmen
 over, yet
 the knights
 durst not
 follow.
 Alexander
 then goes

¹ MS. repeats *for to do* twice.

² Three lines with miniature F.

first over the bridge with his princes. Then the army follows. Alexander destroys the bridge behind him. The knights murmur thereat, fearing disaster.

Alexander's speech to his men.

Let them all perish or conquer, for they shall never see home again till they have overthrown all their enemies.

Darius gathers a great force

* Leaf 16. to meet Alexander upon the river Tigris. But his men flee.

The brave Persian who dares alone try to take Alexander's life in disguise for the sake of the

þe bryges, & all his pryncez folowed hym, and sytheñ all þe Oste. Twa grete ryuers rynnnes thurgh Medee, Mesopotamy and Babiloyne, þat es to say Tygre & Eufrates, and soo rynnnez in-to þe reuere¹ of Nilus. When Alexander & all hys Oste 4 ware past ouer Eufrates, he gert smyte sonder þe brygge þat he hadd' gert make bifore, and dissolue ilk a pece þare-off fra oper. And when his knyghtis sawe that, þay ware reghte heuy and murnede gretly þarefore, and said' emanges þam selfe, 'What 8 sañ we now doo,' quop þay, 'when we are harde by-stadde wit oure enemys & walde flee. For ouer þis reuere may we nozte wynñ.' And when Alexander perceyued' þat murmoure of his folke, he said vn-to þamñ. 'What es þat,' quop he, 'þat 3e say 12 amangez 3ow, "If it falle þat we flee owte of þe bataile." Sothely, I late 3ow wele wite, þat þis is þe cause whi I garte for-do þis brygg, þat I gert make; For-thi, þat owþer we schulde feghte manly or eñs if [we] walde flee, we schulde all perische at 16 anes and all drynke of a coppe. For-whi þe victorye es nozte aretted' to þamñ þat fliez, Bot to þamñ þat habydez, or folowes on þe chace. Þare-fore comforthez 3ow wele, & bese balde of hertis, and thynke it bot a playe stalworthly to feghte. For I say 20 3ow sekerly; we ne schaff neuer see Macedoyne, be-fore we hafe ouercomenñ all oure enemys, And þamñ wit þe victorie we sañ tourne hame agayne.'

²In þis mene tyme, kyng Darius gadirde a grete multitude 24 of meñ agaynes Alexander, and ordeyned' ouer þamñ fyve-hundreth * chyftaynes of grete lordes and lused hym wit his meñ apoñ þe reuere of Tygre. And one a day thir twa kynges wit þaire bather Ostes mett to-gedir apoñ a faire felde 28 and faughte to-gedir wonder egerly. Bot sone Darius meñ hadd' þe werre & 3ode to grounde thikkfalde, slayne in þe felde. And wheñ þe remenante saw þat, þay tuk þamñ to þe flighte. In Darius oste was a mañ of Perse, a doghety, & a balde; 32 to whaym Darius highte for to giffe his doghter to wyfe, if so were, þat he myghte, by any way, sla kyng Alexander. This mañ gatt hym clethyng and Armour like vn-to þe macedoyns, and went amangez þamñ, as þay faghte, ay till he come by-hynd 36 kyng Alexander. And alsoñ als he come nere hym, he lifte his

¹ Scribe first wrote *rerere* here, and then wrote a *y* (*ryvere*) over it. The process is

quite plain.

² Two lines with small miniature I.

- swerde on heghte, & lete flye at hyn̄ wit aft̄ þe myghte þat he
 hade, and hitt hym on þe heued̄ so fercely, þat he perched¹ his
 bacenett, and drewe þe blode of hym. Wheñ Alexander knyghtis
 4 saw that: þay tuke hym anone, & broghte hym bifore Alexander,
 and Alexander, supposyng þat he hadde bene a macedoyne, saide
 vn-till hym. 'Wirchipfull man,' quop he, ' & doghety & strange
 what ayled þe at me, for to giffe suylke a strake, knewe þou
 8 noȝte wele þat it was I, Alexander ȝour helperc & ȝour allere
seruante.' And [the] Percyene ansuerd̄, & said̄, 'Wiete þou
 wele wirchipfull emperour,' quop he, 'I ne ame na macedoyne,
 bot I am a mañ of Perse; and this dede I didd̄. For kyng
 12 Darius made me a promysse of his doghetir to wife, if I myghte
 brynge hym thi heid̄.' Than kyng Alexander called bi-for hym
 all his knyghtis and askede þañ what þañ thoghte was for to
 do wit this mañ. Sun̄ ansuerde & saide þañ thoghte it beste
 16 to gerre smyte of his heid̄, Sum for to putt hym to þe fire for to
 brynne, Sum to gare drawe & hang hym. And when Alexander
 had herde þaire conceit, he ansuerd̄ & said̄: 'Sirs,' quop he,
 'what wrange or what defawte cañ ȝe fynde in þis mañ, Señ he
 20 hase besied̄ hym tilf obey tilf his lordes commandement, and at
 his power fulfilled̄ it. Whilke of ȝow, so demeȝ hym worthy to
 be dedde, es worthy in tyme commynge to hafe þe same dome.
 For if I commande ane of ȝow for to ga & sla Darius, þe same
 24 payne, that ȝe deme þis mañ for to suffre, ware ȝe worthy for to
 suffre ȝourselve of Darius, if ȝe myȝte be getyñ.' ² And * þan he
 commanded̄ þat he schulde wende hame to his felawes wit-owtten̄
 any harme. When Darius herde þat his lordes ware slayne in
 28 grete nowmer, he gadered̄ a grete multitude of knyghtis and of
 fotemeñ, and went vp on a hill þat es called̄ Taurisius, and thare
 he made his mustre of his meñ, supposyng þat he schuld ouer-
 come Alexander thurgh multitude of folke. Bot alsoñ als þay
 32 mett wit þaire bathere osteȝ, and bigañ for to fighte, Darius
 meñ fledd̄ and hymselfe also. And Alexander persuede hym
 vn-to þe citee of Bactriañ, and þare he lugged hym, and offerde
 Sacrafice tilf his goddeȝ. And on þe morne he garte assaile þe

King's
daughter.

Alexander
asks him
why he did
this. He
answers.

Alexander
asks coun-
sel of his
knights,
what shall
he do with
this man?
Alexander
speaks to
them, and
shows this
man forth
to them as
an ex-
ample.
And then
he utters
his will.

* Leaf 16
bk.

Darius
gathers his
men again
to the fight,
but yet
again is he
overcome.

Alexander
pursues
him.
He con-
quers Bac-

¹ The scribe wrote first 'perceed,' altered afterwards, in a very rough way, to 'perched.'

² M.S. reads 'and he commanded' at

bottom of first side of leaf 16 and 'þan he commanded' on the top of second side of the same leaf.

trian,
taking
great trea-
sure to-
gether with
Darius'
mother and
wife.

citee, and wanne it on werre. And in þe cheffe place *pare*-of he sett his trone. And all þir oþer citez þat were abowte it, he wanned þam̄ o werre, & putt þam̄ vnder his subieccion̄. In þis ilke citee of Bactriā, he fande tresour wit-owtten̄ nowmer, and 4 also his moder, and his wyfe.

A Persian
prince
offers to
betray
Darius to
Alexander
if he will
grant him
ten thou-
sand
knights.
Alex-
ander's
answer.

¹ And in þe mene tyme, whils *Alexander* lay at Batran: *pare* come a prynce of Darius oste vn-till *Alexander*, & said vn-till hym̄, 'Wirchipfull emperour,' quop he, 'I hafe a lang tyme bene 8 a knyght of Darius, and done hym grete seruyce; and zitt to this day I had neuer na reward of hym. And *pare*-fore if it like vn-to zowre maieste; take me ten thowsande of zour men̄ of armes; and I hete zow, for to bryngge to zour hande kyng 12 *Darius*, & þe maste parte of his oste.' And when̄ *Alexander* had herde þis, he said vn-till hym. 'Frende,' quop he, 'I thanke þe mekill of thi faire promys. Neuer þe lesse, I late þe wite my men̄ will nozte beleue þat þou wilt feghte agaynes thȳn owen̄ 16 peple.' In þe mene tyme a Prynce of Darius oste sent vn-till hym a letter, of whilk þis was þe tenour.

Letter of
one of
Darius'
princes to
Darius be-
seching
help.

* Leaf 17.

² 'To Darius, grete kyng of kynges, his lordes whilke he³ hase ordeyned cheftaynes vnder hym Sende; meke seruyce. Oftymes 20 be-fore this hafe we wreten̄ to zour maieste, and now agayne we writte vn-to zow, & late; zow wite þat þe macedoynes & kyng *Alexander*, as wode lyouns ere enterde* oure landez, and all oure strenthes, as a wilde raueschande beste he hase destroyed: 24 & oure knyghtes slayne. And oppressed we are wit so grete tribulacionns, þat we [may] na lengare suffre his mawgree, ne his malece bere. Where-fore, mekly we be-seke zour benyngne maiestee, þat ze wilt drawe to zoure mynde oure meke seruyce, 28 and swilke socoure vouchsaffe to send vs, þat we put off and agaynestande þe violence & þe malice of oure fore-said enemys.' When̄ *Darius* had redde þis *lettre*, on ane he gert writte a lettir to kyng *Alexander*, sayand on þis wyse. 32

Darius to
Alexander,
reproach-
ing his vain
ambitions,
thanking

⁴ 'Daryus kyng of Perse and kyng of kynges, vn-to my seruande *Alexander*, I say. Now late *pare* es commen̄ till oure eres tythynges: þat þou wenez to euen̄ thi littilhede till oure heghe magnificence. Bot Sēn it es impossible till a heuy asse, wit 36

¹ Three lines with miniature A and knight's head within.

² Three lines space with miniature T.

³ MS. repeats 'he' twice.

⁴ Three lines space with miniature D and a man's head within, much faded.

owtten wenges, or oper instrumentez of flying, for to be lifte vp to þe sternes, late nozte thyñ hert be raysede to hye in pride for þe victories þat þou hase geteñ. We hase wele herd tell þat
 4 þou hase done gentilly, and schewed grete humanytee till oure moder, oure wyfe, & oure childre, and þarefore I late þe wele wite þat, als lang als þou dose wele to þañ, þou sañ fynde me nane enemy to the. And if þou do itt to þañ þou sañ hase þe
 8 enemytee of me, and þarefore spare þañ noghte, bot do to þañ as þe liste. For somtyme þou sañ see & fele þe sentence of oure ire lighte apoñ thi heghe pride.' When Alexander hadd redde þis *lettre* he wrate hym Anoper agayne whare-off þe tenour
 12 was this.

¹ Alexander þe soñ of Philippe & qwene Olympias to Darius kyng of Perse we write. Pride & vayne glorie hase oure goddez all way hated; and takez vengeance of dedly meñ þat takes
 16 apoñ þañ þe name of immortalitee. Bot þou, als I wele see, cesseez nozte zitt hider-to for to blasfeme in all þat þou may. Bot of that þat þou blamez me for þe benygytes that I schewed
 20 þi moder, þi wyfe, & þi childre; þou ert moued on a lewed fantasye. For I late þe wele wyte, I did it nozte * for to be thanked of the, ne for to hase thi Beneuolence þarefore. Bot it come of a gentilnes of oure awenñ hert, fownded in vertu. Of
 24 thee victories also whilke þe forluke of godd hase sent vs, ere we na-thing enpriddede. For we knawe wele þat oure goddis
 28 onane.' þis *lettre* gaffe Alexander to þe messangers of Darius and many grete giftez þare wit. Seyme,² he sent anoper *lettre*, till his prynce & his lordez, of þis tenour.

³ Alexander, þe soñ of Philippe & of þe quene Olympias vn-
 32 to þe prynce & þe lordez vnder our subieccioñ in Capadoce, In laodice, or ells whare duelland, gretyng, & gude grace. We charge þou & commandeþ þou straytly þat ilkañ of þow
 36 send þañ till Alexander, þat we and oure knyghtis may gere

him for his kindness to his wife and children, and enjoining him to continue his courtesy to them.

Alexander to Darius, reproaching him with assuming to himself the character of deity, spurning

* Leaf 17 bk.

his proffered thanks, and leaving the decision of the matter to the gods.

Alexander writes to his Lords, ordering commissariat materials.

¹ Three lines space, miniature A, with king's head (much faded).

² MS. clearly reads *seyme*, it may be for 'seyine' (=seine).

³ Four lines space, red capital A, much smudged; a small *a* written beside it in the margin.

make vs of þam clethyng, & schooes; And wit cameles þat 3e haue at Alexsander gerre cary þam to þe water of Eufrates.' In þis mene tyme a prynce of Darius, Nostande by name, wrate to Darius on þis wise. 4

One of his barons writes to Darius, telling of his own defeat and the treachery of others.

¹ 'To Darius þe wirchipfull grete godd' his seruande Nostand' law seruyce. Me aughte nozte to sende swylk tythyng to 3our ryalle maiestee, bot grete nede gers me do it. Þarefore be it knowen vn-to 3our hie lordchipe, þat twa grete pryncez of 3ours, & I, hase foghten wit kyng Alexander, And hym'es fallen þe victorie, & slayne he hase thir twa worthy pryncez, & mekiß oper folke, and I fleed greuously wonded. And many worthi knyghtis of 3ours hase for-saken 3our lordchipe & ioyned þam till Alexander oste, þe whilk he hase wirchipfully, and hase giffen grete lordchipes of 3ours.' And when Darius had redd' þis *lettre*, he sent in haste till Nostand, and commanded hym for till ordeyne a grete Oste; and manfully agaynestande þe folke of Macedoyne. He sent also a *lettre* to Porus kyng of Ynde, prayng hym to helpe hym agaynes Alexander, and Porus wrate agayne in þis manere. 12

Darius writes to him, ordering him to gather a great force, and to Porus, King of India, asking help. Porus replies that he is at that time grievously sick, but that he will come as soon as possible with ten legions of knights.

² 'Porus, kyng of Ynde, vn-to Darius, kyng of Perse, gretyng. For þou hase prayed vs to come to the in helpyng *of^s the agaynes thyn enemys, we late the wete, þat we are redy & alwaye hase bene, for to com to helpe 3ow. Bot as at þis tyme we are lettete to com to 3ow, be-cause of grete seknesse þat we ere stadd' in, Neuer þe lesse, sekerly, it es rizte heuy vn-till vs, & greuous, vn-till [vs to] here of þe grete injury þat es done vn-till 3ow. And þarefore we late 3ow wite, þat wit-in schorte tym, we sall come for to helpe 3ow wit teñ legyouns of knyghtis.' Bot when Rodogorius, Darius moder, herd' tesse þat Darius hir soñ ordayned hym for to feghte agayne wit kyng Alexander scho was rizte sory and wrote a *lettre* vn-till hym þat contened' this sentence. 20

Darius' mother writes to him, coun-

'To⁴ kyng Darius, hir moste biloued' son, Rodogorius, his modir sende 3 gretyng & ioy. I hafe vnderstanden þat 3e hafe assemblede 3our men, & mekiß oper folke also, for to feghte 32

¹ Four lines with red capital T, much smudged; a small t written beside it in margin.

² Two lines with smudged capital P; a small p written in margin.

³ On leaf 17 of *þe*, on leaf 18 of *the*.

⁴ *Rodorius* scratched out. Four lines with large capital T in red; small t in margin beside.

- eftsones wit Alexander. Bot I late þe wite it wiff auaile þe
 nathyng. For þoghe 3e hadd' gadirde to gedir alle þe meñ in
 þe werlde duellyng, 3it 3e ware vnable to agayne-stande hym.
- 4 For þe foreluke of godd' mayntenez hym, & vphalde3 hym. And
 þarefore dere soñ, it es my consell, 3our heghenesse of herte
 3e lese, & fall sumwhate fra 3our glory, and bese fauorable to þe
 gretnes of Alexander. For better it es to forga þat at 3e may
 8 no3te halde, and haffe in pesse þan þat at 3e may halde, þan for
 too couett all and be excluded' & for-ga all.' Wheñ Darius
 redde þis *lettre*, he was gretly troubled' and weped' bitterly,
 command' vn-till his mynde, his moder, his wyf, & his childer.
- 12 ¹In the mene tyme kyng Alexander remowed' his oste, and
 drew nere þe cite of Susis, in þe whilke Darius was lengand'
 the same tyme, so þat he my3te see all þe heghe hille3 þat ware
 abownd' þe citee. Þan Alexander commanded' all his meñ, þat
 16 ilkañ of þañ suld cutte downde a brawnche of a tree, and bere
 þañ furth wit þañ & dryfe bi-fore þañ alle manere of beste3 þat
 þay my3te fynde in þe way. And when the Percyenes saw þañ
 fra þe heghe hille3 þay wondred' þam gretly. And Alexander come
 20 wit his oste to þe citee of Susis and lused hym nere besyde þe
 citee. And thañ he called' his prynce3 & his oþer lordez and
 said vn-to þañ, 'Late vs,' quop he, 'send a messangere to kyng
 Darius & bidd' hym ²owþer & com' feghte wit vs or ellis * *submyt*
 24 hym vn-till vs.' The nexte nyghte after, Godd' Amoñ apperede
 vn-till Alexander in his slepe bryngand' hym þe figurre of Mercuri
 & a mantill, and anoþer manere of garment of Macedoyne, and
 saide vn-till hym. 'Alexander, soñ,' quop hee, 'euer mare wheñ
 28 þou hase nede, sañ I helpe the. And þarefore luke þou sende
 noghte to Darius þat messangere þat þou spake off. For I wiff
 þat þou thi selfe clethe thee wit my figure & wende thedir þi
 selfe; if alle it be *perilous* for to do, Dred þe na thyng, for
 32 I sañ be thi helpe, so þat þou sañ hafe na *maner* of disesse.
- On þe morne wheñ Alexander rase fra slepe, he was gretly
 comforthed' of his dreme & called till hym his prynce3 and
 talde þañ alle his dreme, and þay assentede alle, þat he schulde
 36 wende to Darius in his propir *per:son*. And onane he called' vn-
 till hym ane of þe prince3, þe whilke highte Emulus. This

selling him
 to lower
 himself
 somewhat
 and yield
 to Alex-
 ander's
 greatness
 rather
 than
 lose all.

Alexander
 comes to
 Susa, driv-
 ing before
 him a
 crowd of
 beasts. He
 decides to
 send a mes-
 senger to
 Darius.

* Leaf 18
 bk.

The Vision
 of God
 Amon in
 the night,
 who tells
 Alexander
 to go
 alone to
 Darius in
 his figure.

¹ Four lines with large red capital I;
 small i written in margin.

² *hym* inserted afterwards in left-hand
 margin.

Alexander rides with a single knight to the River Granicus which was frozen over. prynce was a wyghte man, & an hardy & wouder trewe tiff Alexander. And þaṁ Alexander bad hym lepe one a horse, and brynge wit hym a noþer horse & folow hym. And he didd so. And when þay come to gedir to þe water of Graunte, þat in þe 4 langage of Perse es called Struma, þay fande it frosen ouer, and Alexander onane chaunged he¹ wede, & lefte þe foresaid prynce wit twa horse at þe water-syde and hym selfe, wit þe horse þat he satt apoṁ, went ouer þe water apoṁ þe Ys, towarde þe citee of 8 Susis. And his prynce besoghte hym þat he walde suffre hym wende wit hym, ne perauenture any disesse fetle hym by þe waye. And Alexander ansuerd & sayde, 'Habyde me here,' quop he, 'For he saff be my helpere, whaṁ in dremez I sawe appere 12 vn-to me.' This ilke water I spake of bi-fore, aṁ þe wynter seson ilke a nyghte was frosen aṁ ouer; bot tymely in þe mornynge als sone als þe warme soṁ smate apoṁ it, þaṁ it dissoluede agayne, & raṁ wonder swiftly; þe brede of þat water es þe space of a 16 furlange. When Alexander come to þe zate of þe citee the Perciens, when þay saw hym, hadd grete wonder of his figure, and wend he hadd bene a godd; and onane þay asked hym what he was? And he ansuerd, and said he was a messangere sent 20 fra kyng Alexander to paire lorde Darius, and be-lyfe þay broghte hym til hym. Darius, when Alexander come bi fore hym, said vn-til hym. 'Whethyṁ ert þou,' quop he? 'I ame,' quop Alexander, 'sent vn-to þe fra kyng Alexander to wiete where 24 to þou taries to come tiff hym to gyffe hym batelle. Owthir come & feghte manfully wit thyne enemys or eṁs submitte þe tiff hym & * pay² hym tribute.'

* Leaf 19.

And Darius heard him and said, 'Art thou then the Alexander 28 who with such madness shaped thy speech, for I see thou holdest thyself not from words as a messenger doth, but art bold as a king. Yet know that by thy words I am not frightened at all. Come dine with me this day.' And with 32 these words, he reached out his hand to him and took him by his right, and led him into the palace. And Alexander, musing, began to say: 'A right good token hath this barbarian wrought me when he clasped my right hand and drew me into 36

¹ MS. reads 'he'. We ought perhaps to substitute 'his'.

² Pay him tribute is written at the

bottom of leaf 18; between that leaf and what is now leaf 19 a whole leaf is missing.

the palace, because, as the gods say sooth, ere long the palace shall be mine.' And going in, Darius and Alexander lay by a table, and the daintiest feast was laid out. And Darius' 4 marshall gazed hard at Alexander face to face. And the table was wreathed in cleanest gold. But the Persians, seeing Alexander's shape, yet knew nothing of what wisdom, doughtiness, and strength lurked in this small body. The dishes and tables 8 and seats were wrought of the finest gold. The cup-bearers bore cups in golden vessels and rarest jewels. And when a cup was handed to Alexander, he hid it in his breast. And another cup was brought to him and he did the same, and thus too with 12 a third. And those who bore the cups, seeing this, gave the news to the Emperor Darius. And he, hearing of it, rose up, saying: 'Friend, what is this that thou doest, hiding the cups in thy breast?' And Alexander: 'In our king's feasts the 16 guests are wont, whenever they will, to take their drinking-vessels. But, as this seemeth to you unworthy, I will give them back forthwith.' And with these words he gave them back to the cup-bearers. But the Persians who sate at the 20 feast said each to each, 'a good custom, indeed, and one to be praised.' And some lords, too, praised this way and exalted it. But one of the Princes of Darius, called Anapolus, sitting at the feast, gazed hard at Alexander and his face. For he had seen 24 him when, at Darius' bidding, he went into Macedonia to take tribute of Philip. He, knowing his voice and looking on his face, began to think to himself and say: 'Is this not Alexander?' And rising at once he drew near to Darius, saying: 28 'This messenger whom thou beholdest is Alexander, the son of Philip of Macedon.' And Alexander, seeing them with each other in talk, knew they were speaking of him and he was known. And at this he rose up from his place and leapt away 32 from the board. And taking a blazing torch from a Persian's hand, himself mounted his palfrey, which he found ready outside Darius's palace, and fled in the swiftest flight. And the Persians seeing this, taking weapons, mounted their steeds with 36 a mighty stir, and quickly followed after Alexander. And in the darkness of the nightfall, they began to stray, some scratched their faces by the tree-boughs, some falling into ditches. But Alexander, bearing his blazing torch in hand, fared straight

The Feast of Darius and its magnificence.

Alexander hides the golden cups in his breast. Darius chides him. Alexander answers by giving them to the cup-bearers.

Alexander is recognized by one who had been in Macedonia. He tells Darius.

Alexander flees away and is pursued by the Persians. He escapes in the darkness.

Darius on his throne sees the golden image of Xerxes break, which fore-tokens the end of the Persian Empire. Alexander swims the river, but his horse is lost.

forward. Now, Darius sate on his throne and thought of Alexander and how great his daring was. He saw a statue of gold of Xerxes the Persian king, who sate below the high-seat in the hall. And at once the statue broke and was all scattered 4
asunder. And Darius seeing this was smitten with heaviness of heart and began to weep sorely and long. And he said: 'This foretokeneth the wasting of my life, and the utter down-fall of the Persian kingdom.' Alexander, however, coming to 8
the river Grancus, found it swollen, and leapt athwart it. But ere he was over the stream burst its banks, and swept his horse away; with great hardship Alexander escaped and met Eumulus, his lord. And thus he went back to his army and 12
told them of Darius, how he had dealt with him, and the torch with which he had fled away.

HOW ALEXANDER PUT HEART INTO HIS HOST ANEW.

Alexander gathers his army.

And on the following day, he gathered his army, which told two hundred and twenty thousand of weaponed men. And 16
he went up

* * * * *

* Leaf 19. Alexander's harangue to his men, telling them to have trust in their own bravery.

*on a hye place & comforthed his meñ and said vn-to þaṇð: 'þe multitudine of þe percienes,' quopþ he, 'may nozte be euend to þe multitudine of þe greckes. For sewrly we are ma þan þay. And 20
if þay were ane hundreth sythes maa theñ wee, late nozte þour hertis faile þow þarefore. For I telle þow a grete multitudine of flyes may do na harme till a fewee waspes.' And wheñ þe Oste had herde thire wordes þay commendide hym halelely wit a 24
voyce.

Darius crosses the river Grancus with a mighty army and meets Alexander in battle.

¹ Thaṇð þe emperour Darius remowed his oste, and come to þe reuere of Graunt on þe nyghte, and went ouer on þe ys, and þar he lused hym. The Oste of Darius was wonder grete and 28
strange. For þay hadd in þaire oste X^m cartes ordaynd For þe werre, and grete multitudine of Olyfantez, wit towres of tree oñ þaṇð, stuffed wit feghtyng meñ. And sone after
appoñ a day thir twa kynges wit þaire ostez mett sameñ 32
on a faire felde, Darius wit his meñ, and Alexander wit his men.

¹ Four lines with large cursive ornamental T of new type and decorative style.

Than Alexander lepte apouð his horse, þat highte Buctiphalas, and rade furthe bi-fore all his oste, and houed in þe myddes waye bi-twene þe twa ostes. And when þe Percyenes saw hym, 4 þay had grete wonder of hym, and ware riȝte ferde for hym, by cause he was so vggly. Neuere-þe-lesse þay tromped vp & went to-warde Alexander. And sone þe bateff ioyned, & faghte to-gedir fersely, and many meid dyed on ayther party; þare was so 8 thikke schott of arowes, þat þe ayer was couerde, as it had bene wit a clowde. Some faghte wit swerdeȝ, sum wit speres, sum wit axes, & sum wit arowes. Þe felde lay full of folke, sum dede, sum halfe-dede, & sum greuously wounded. Thay begað 12 for to feghte at þe soð-rysyng, and faghte to þe soð-settingng. Bot þare dyed many ma of þe Percyenes þan þare dide of Macedoyns.

Alexander mounts Bucephalus and rides between the two armies. The Persians are afraid of his ugliness. The battle begins and lasts the day. The Persians lose more than the Greeks.

And when Darius sawe his meid faste so thikke in þe felde, he 16 lefte þe felde, and fledd, and þe Percyenes seyng that, þay fledd also. Bot það þaire cartes of werre rane amange þe Percyens & slewe of það folke wit-owte nowmer & namely of fote-meid. For by þat tyme it was myrke nyghte, and þay ne myȝte noȝte see 20 for till eschewe það. When Darius come* to the foresaid watere he fande it froseid, and ouer he went. And when he was ouer, þe oper lordes of perse went apouð þe ysȝ, so grete a multitude þat þay couerde þe ysȝ fra þe taa banke to þe toper, 24 & þat a grete brede, & það onane þe ysȝ brake als sone als Darius was paste ouer, & all þat ware on þe ysȝ ware perischte, ilk a moder soð, & drowned in þe water. Þe remanaunt, when þay come to the water, þay myȝte noȝte wyð ouer. And það þe 28 Macedoynes come, & dange það downe. In this bateffe þare was slaen of þe Percyenes ccc^m wit-owteð thase þat were drowned.

Darius flees and his flight causes the confusion of his army.

*Leaf 19 bk.

He crosses the ice, but his Lords are drowned in its breaking.

Kyng Darius fledd to þe citee of Susis, & went in till his 32 palace, & fette downe to þe grounde, & sigheand & wepande wit a sare hert, he said theis wordes: 'Allas, full wa es me, vnhappye wriche, þat euer I was borne, for þe ire & þe indignacionð of heuend es fallen one mee. For I Darius þat lifte 36 my selued vp to þe sternes, Now am I broghte lawe to þe erthe. Now es Darius, þat conquerede all þe Este nacyons, & made það subiecte & tributaries vn-till hym, fayne for to flee fra his enemys and submytte hym vn-to það. And it ware

Darius flees to the city of Susa. He bewails his lot, for he is fallen from his greatness. He moralizes on the present and future lives, and quotes sacred passages.

knawen vn-to þe wreched mañ, what schulde falle till hym after-warde3, þe schulde hafe littill thoghte of þe tyme present, bot one þe tyme to come solde his tho3te be. In a poynte of a daye it falles, þat þe meke es raysede vp to þe clowdde3, and þe 4 prowde es putt to no3te.' And when he hade saide thir wordes, he rase vp, & satt & wrate a *lettre* vn-till Alexander, sayande on this wyese.

He writes to Alexander.

He praises the great wisdom of Alexander, who even knows what is to come.

Nevertheless he reminds him of his earthly birth, and warns him against pride. For often the end of a man ill accords with the beginning. Hereminds him of the fate of Xerxes.

Darius demands his mother, wife, and children, offering therefor his treasure and the kingship over the Medes and Persians.

¹ 'Till his lorde Alexander, kyng of Macedoyne, Darius, kyng 8 of *Perse*, gretyng & Joy. We hafe wele vndirstanden by þat that we hafe herde of 3owe and sene, þat 3e hafe in 3ow grete wysedom & a hye witt: so þat no3te allanly 3e knawe thynges þat are present or passede, bot also thynges þat ere 12 for to come, and þare-fore all thynges, þat 3e doo: 3e do it wit-owten any lakke or repreue. Neuer-þe-lesse hafe3 in mynde þat ri3te as wee ware, so ware 3e geten & borne of a fleschly womañ. And þare fore rayse no3te 3our herte to hye 16 bi-cause of 3our prowesche & 3our doghty dedis, so þat 3e forgete 3our laste ende. For ofte tymes we see þat þe latter end of a mañ discordes wit þe firste. It suffice3 till a wer-ryoure for to gete þe victorye of his enemys, þose all he 20 schewe no3te alle þe malice þat he may. Remembre 3ow of þe wirchipfull kyng 3erses oure progenytour, þat many victoryes gatt & schane in alle prosperiteez, Be-fore he raysed his hert in pride passande mesure. Alle þe wirchippe þat he hadd 24 wonñ be-fore, he loste in Ellada, þare-fore remembre 3ow, þat all þe wirchipes & þe victoryes þat 3e hafe geten by þe forluke of ² godd'

* * * * *

ye got this victory. To us then who beseech grant your 28 mercy. Yield us our mother, our sons, and wife, and we will render unto you the treasures we have in Aydem and Susa and Batram, the which our fathers hoarded and hid in earthen cellars. And we will give you the kingship of the Medes and 32 Persians, that thus ye may have and keep what victory Jove the all-mighty hath granted you.'

¹ Four lines space with decorated miniature T.

² 'by þe forluke of godd'' is written at the bottom of leaf 18 bk. Between this leaf and what is now numbered leaf 20

a whole leaf is missing; and we are plunged into the middle of quite a different letter of Darius on leaf 20, which is addressed to Porus.

HOW THE MESSENGERS OF DARIUS GAVE ALEXANDER THE LETTER, AND HIS ANSWER.

The messengers of Darius coming then to Alexander gave him the letter, which Alexander read soon before them all. Then one of his chieftains, called Parmerion, said to Alexander :
 4 'Most mighty emperor, take all the wealth which Darius covenants unto thee, and give back to him his wife and sons.' And, hearing this, Alexander called to him the messengers of Darius, and before all spoke thus, saying: 'Tell ye to your
 8 emperor we wonder first that he misdeemed his mother, wife, and sons to be betrayed by our hands. If he be overcome, bid him not promise us a reward. If he bow himself to our yoke, all his honours and the majesty of God shall be laid
 12 bare to our sway. If he be not overcome, let him do us battle once again.' This said, he gave them rich gifts and sent them forth away. Then he bade the soldiers take up and gather the bodies of the dead and bury them in graves :
 16 and he bade them heal those that were wounded.

A noble of Alexander counsels him to accept these terms. But he will not. But bids Darius either submit himself or do battle.

He orders the dead to be buried.

HOW ALEXANDER ENCAMPED BY THE STREAM GRANCUS.

Then he encamped with his host by the stream of Grancus, and wintered there some days. And there he offered up victims to the gods. And about the river there were palaces,
 20 and they were the fairest, raised up with greatest skill, and Xerxes the King of the Persians had built them. Alexander, seeing them, bade them be burned. And soon after this, stirred by ruth, he gave word none should dare touch them.
 24 And there too was a most fair and very wide field in which the Kings and Deemsters of Persia were of old buried. And digging into this field the Macedonians found in the graves gemmed vases. And there they found the grave of Ninus the
 28 King of Assyria and Persia, which was hollowed out of a single amethyst, and engraven on the outside with palm-leaves and sundry kinds of birds. And so bright was the amethyst that even from the outside the man's body appeared whole.
 32 And in this place was a narrow and evil tower on which stood many men, some with cut legs, some with broken thighs, some with torn hands, and some blinded. They hearing

He encamps with his army by the Grancus and sacrifices. Alexander commands the palaces to be burnt.

The burying-place of the Kings and Judges of Persia, wherein treasure is found. The grave of Ninus and its wonders. The Tower of the Maimed Men.

They be-
seech
mercy of
Alexander,
who re-
stores them
to their
own.
For they
were nobles
dispossess-
ed by
Darius.

the noise of the armed men cried out to Alexander, who hearing their cries, bade them be taken thence. And seeing them was struck with ruth and wept, and bade each one be given ten thousand drachmas, and be restored every one to 4 his own. For Darius kept them in prison, since they were of noble birth, and awarded all their possessions to his thralls. In the meantime the messengers from Alexander to Darius told all that Alexander had said. And Darius hearing this 8 began to get ready for the fight. And he wrote another letter to Porus King of India, which runneth as follows:—

Darius'
letter to
Porus,
King of
India.

THE LETTER SENT BY DARIUS TO PORUS KING OF
INDIA.

He asks
him again
for help
against
Alexander,
since he
has re-
solved to
fight to the
very death.
For it is
better to
die in the
field than to
see the end
of his king-
dom and
people.

'Darius King of the Persians to Porus King of Our Indians joy. We asked but lately of you, and again we ask you to 12 come and help against those who strive to overthrow our palace. We know well also that the like harm will light on you. For this Alexander, who fighteth thus, hath an un- quenchable and wild soul, which like a lion ceaseth not, and 16 is like the sea when stirred by mighty winds. Furthermore, unwillingly though it be, we have gathered numberless races, and we have taken our counsel to fight with him to the very death.

20

* Leaf 20.

Darius
writes to
Porus to
succour
him for the
sake of
himself, his
dynasty,
and his
people,
promising
him help
and the
spoils of
Alexander.
He warns
him that as
Alexander
had done
to him, so
would be
done to
Porus.

* better vs es for to dy manly in þe felde þan for to see þe mescheffe of oure pople & þe dissolacion of oure rewme. Whare-fore, hafand' reward' and compassioñ of oure disesse, we be-seke 3ow, þat 3e late oure prayeres sattel' in 3our hert, 24 & helpe for to succour vs now at oure nede, hafand' in 3oure mynde þe grete noblaye of oure progenytours. And I seure 3ow þat [I sall] giffe ilke a fote-mañ þat come3 wit 3ow, thre pece3 of golde, And ilke a horse-mañ, fyve pece3 of golde, 28 And also mete & drynke ynoghe to 3ow & all 3our meñ. And whare so 3e lugge 3ow, we schaffe fynde 3ow a hundreth & fourscore tentes curyously wroghte. And also we schaff giffe 3ow Alexander horse Buktyphalas, and alle appairail', 32 & þe araye þat langes tiff Alexander hallely schaff be 3ours and also all þe spoylle of his folke sall be dalte amangez 3oure folke. Whare-fore we beseke 3ow þat also soñ als this

lettre commez to 3ow, 3e haste 3ow till vs in all þat 3e may. For wite 3e wele for certayne, that riȝte als he done till vs, so he purpose hym in tyme commynge for to do to 3owe.'

4 ¹In the men tyme, certane meñ of Darius went fra hym & come till Alexander, & talde hym, þat Darius purposede hym for to feghte wit hym estesones, and had sent till Porus, kyng of Inde, for to come in grete haste, for to helpe hym.

8 Wheñ Alexander herd þis, be-lyfe he removed his Oste to ward Darius, thynkand in his herte þat he wolde on na wyse take apouñ hym þe name of Emperour be-fore he hadd wouñ Darius and his rewme one werre. And when Darius herde

12 of þe commyng of Alexander, he dredd hym gretly & þe Percyenes also. Bot þare was two pryncez of Darius, of þe whilke þe tane highte Bisso & þe toper Ariobarsantes, thir twa wheñ pair² herd of þe comyng of Alexander, conspyred

16 to-gedir for to slaa þaire lord Darius, supposyng for till hafe a grete thanke of Alexander, and a gret reward for þaire dede. And ayther of þauñ ware sworne till oper. And thañ thay went to þe kynges palace, and come intill his chamber wit

20 draweñ swerdes in þaire handez, and fand Darius bi hym ane. And wheñ Darius saw that, he trowed wele þat þay wolde sla hym, And said vn-to þauñ: 'Dere frende3, hedir to wardez hafe I called 3ow my seruande3, bot now I call 3ow

24 my lordes. What ayles 3ow at me þat 3e will sla me? Haes Alexander cheriste þe macedoynes mare þauñ I hafe done 3ow? Hafe I noȝte sorow & disese ynoghe of enemyse wit-owtteñ? Bot if 3e conspire agaynes me for to sla me wit owtteñ gilt,

28 I say for sothe, & 3e sla me * thus preuelye, And Alexander may gete 3ow, he will take mare cruell vengeance one 3ow, theñ on any theues. For sothely it es na comforthe ne lykyng till ane Emperour to synd an oper Emperour murthered wit his aweñ

32 meñ.' Bot þay were na-thinge stirrede to petee, ne tendernesse, ne mercy, thurgh his wordez, Bot went till hym and wit grete cruelnesse smate hym, & al-to magle hym, and went faste þaire waye, & lefte hym for dede.

36 ³And wheñ Alexander herd tell þat Darius was slayne he

Alexander hearing of this through treachery marches against Darius.

Two nobles of Darius conspire to slay him that they may have reward of Alexander.

Darius seeing them begs for mercy, and foretells the future vengeance of Alexander. But they slay him.

* Leaf 20 bk.

Alexander hearing of

¹ Five lines space with a capital I.

² MS. *þair* for *þay*, just as on leaf 34, l. 23. Cf. Icelandic *þeir*. There is no mis-

take here, as the two spellings vary *þaire* and *þair* on leaves 34, 54.

³ Four lines with red capital A.

his death enters Susa without resistance. The conspirators hide themselves.

Alexander goes to the room where Darius lies dying.

Alexander has pity on Darius and promises him all he once had if he will but live.

Alexander says he would rather give his own Empire to Darius than behold him dead.

* Leaf 21.

Darius embraces Alexander.

Darius' speech to Alexander on the worthlessness and unsteadfastness of

went ouer þe water of Graunt, and aʃ his Oste wit hym, and come to þe cetee of Susis. And alsoone als þe Percyenes saw hym, Thay Opened þe zates of þe citee, & rescheyued hym wit grete wirchipe. And when þe pryncez þat slewe Darius wiste 4 þat Alexander was comen in-to þe citee þay went & helde þam in hidils ay till þay myzte gete knaweynge of Alexander witt, as towchand þat that þay hadd done to Darius. Alexander þan went in-to þe kynges Palace, and as he went þare-in he 8 merueyled hym gretly of þe biggyng þare-off. For Cirus þe kyng of Perse gert bigg it ryally. And the pament þareoffe was made of stanes of dyuerse colours, & þe walles aʃ enueround wit fyne golde & precyous stanes & sternes lyke to þe firmament, 12 and pelers of golde þat bare vp þe werke. When Alexander saw aʃ this curious werke, he meruailed hym gretly. And than he went to þe chambre þare Darius laye halfe dede. And alsoone als he saw hym he hadd grete rewthe & compassiõ 16 of hym, and he take off his awenð mantill & couerd [hym] þare-wit, & went and graped his wondes and wepid for hym riȝt tenderly, & said un-till hym. ' Rise vp, sir Darius,' quop he, ' & be of gude comforthe. And als frely as euer þou reioysede thyñ 20 Empire, so mot þou zitt do, And be als myghty, & als gloryouse als euer þou was. I swere the here by oure myzty goddes & by þe faythe in my body, þat here I resigne vn-to the aʃ thyñ empyre, desyrand souerayngly for to hafe þe lyfe of the, as þe 24 soñ of ¹ þe Fader, For sekerly it es vnfitand & unsemly till ane emperour for to be reioysede of an oper emperours mescheffe & disesse, when fortune hase forsaked hym. Telle me, sir, what þay are þat hase thus fareñ wit the, and I sewre þe als I am 28 trew mañ I sail venge the to þe uttereste.' And * when Alexander had said this & mekiñ mare, Sare wepand Darius putt furthe his hande, and layde his arme abowte Alexander nekke, and kyssed his breste, his nekke, & his hande, & saide 32 thir wordez, thare that here folowes. ² ' A, dere soñ Alexander,' quop he, ' als thi heghe witt knawes wele, aʃ this werlde es corrupt and sett in malice. For þe souerayne forlute of godd, aʃ thynges knawande fra þe begynnyng, and hafand felyng 36 of þe wirkynges for to come, made mañ in that wyse, at þe

¹ þe is written in above the line in the MS.

² Four lines miniature with ornamented red capital A.

begynnynge, þat nathing es in hym stable ne faste. So þat all
 thynges þat ere passande & werldely, fra þat he faile of all earthly things,
 gouernance, tournes alsoñ tiff hym in contrarye. For if godd̄
 4 hadd̄ ordeyned̄ all thynges esy to mañd and alwaye wit-owtend̄
 chaungynge sent hym prosperitee, mañd schulde be lyftede vp
 so hie in pryde & in vayne glorye, þat he solde nozte arett affe
 his wele-fare & his welthe vn-to godd̄, bot tiff his awenñ desert
 8 & his awenñ vertu. And so schulde meñ gaa fra þaire makare.
 On þe toper syde if þe heghe wysseomñ of godd̄ hadd̄ made
 þe werlde oñ þat wyse þat all illes and infelicites fell apowñ mañd
 wit-owtten any maner of gudenesse, so many freletese sulde folow
 12 þe kynde of mañd, þat we schulde all be draweñ in-to þe gilder
 of disparacionñ, so þat we solde hafe na triste in þe gudnes of
 godd̄. And þarefore grete godd̄ wolde so wisely skifte all
 thynges, þat, wheñ a mañd full of felicitye, thurgh̄ his heghe
 16 pride will nozte knawe his makere, Fra þe heghte of pride in-to
 þe pitte of mekenes & lawnes he moñd be plungedede. So þat he
 þat thurgh̄ pride & felicitye forgatt his godd̄, thurgh̄ fallynge in
 wrechidnesse & disesse hafe mynde of his godd̄. Reghte als þou
 20 may see bi me, my dere soñd Alexander, þat was raysede vp so
 hye in pride & vayne glorye, thurgh̄ reches & prosperitee þat
 feife vn-to me, þat I trowed nozte þat I was goddes creature
 bot goddes Felawe. And þañd, thurgh̄ blyndenness of pride,
 24 I couthe nozte see that, þat now, thurgh̄ scharpenesse of mekenes
 and mescheffe, I see clerely & knawes. Bot if it happenñ þat any
 mañd be vmbilappede wit grete infelicitee, so þat he, despairand̄
 of þe grace of godd̄, supposse na remedy, ne nane lukes eftere ;
 28 * þañd oure lorde godd̄ raysez hym vp to þe heghte of prosperitee,
 so þat þañd he, þat bi-cause of wrechidnes & infelicitee, myzte
 nozte see godd̄ ne knawe hym, thurgh̄ felicitye & prosperitee
 knawes þat he, þat may bryng a mañd to lawe state, may rayse
 32 a mañd tiff heghe degree. And he þat may rayse a mañd tiff
 heghe degree, may putt hym to lawnesse agayne, wheñd hym lyst,
 and þare-fore, soñd, late nozte thy hert ryse to hye in pride, for þe
 victoryes þat godd̄ hase sent the, if all þou may do now whate þe
 36 list ryzt as [¹ þou] were a godd̄. Bot alway thynke on thy laste
 ende. For þou ert a dedly mañd, and ilk a day if þou be-halde
 graythely þou may see thy dedd̄ bi-fore thyñd eghne. Consedirs

with particular application to himself.

On the presumption of those who have
 * Leaf 21 bk.
 great wealth.

On the power of God to put down the mighty from their seats, and to lift up them of low degree.

¹ þou may have been left out by the scribe beginning a new line.

Darius asks burial of Alexander, and that both peoples should comethere-to. And wills there-to that both empires be one. He bids him be merciful to his widow, and take his daughter Roxana to wife. He dies.

Alexander buries Darius in royal state. He bears the bier himself. The Macedonians and the Persians go before it. Alexander seats himself on the

* Leaf 22. throne of Cyrus, and is crowned with the crown of Darius.

The throne of seven steps with its mystic meanings inwrought.

þou noȝte how oure lyffe may be lykkened to þe werke of Eranes, þat so sotelly makes þaire webbes? Bot alsoñ als a little blaste of wynde puffes apoñ þañ, þay breke, & falles to grownde. Behalde & see how glorius I was ȝisterday & how wrechede I añ 4 to-day, & how law I am broghte. I was lorde nerehande of all þe werlde, & now I hafe na power of myñ awenð selfe. Now I be-seke the, soñ, þat þou wilt bery me wit thy beynge handes. And suffre for to come to myñ exequise bathe 8 þe Macedoynes and þe persyenes. And fra this tyme forwardez, þe empire of Macedoyne & þe empire of perse be bathe ane. Haffe recomend vn-to the my Moder Rodogonð, & trete hir wirchipfully as thyñ awenð Moder. And I be-seke þe also, 12 þat þou be Mercyable to my wyfe. And if ¹ it be lykyng to þe, take Rosañ my dogheter to thi wyfe. For semely it es, þat ȝe be ioynede to-geder þat er comenð of so wirchipfull progenitours, For þou of kyng Philippe, and scho of kyng Darius. And of 16 ȝow twa may a wirchipfull & a noble fruyte sprynge.' And riȝte as he had saide thir wordez he swelt in Alexander armes. Kyng Alexander, þañ, after þe custoñ was for to bery emperours, gert araye Darius body als ryally as he couthe. 20 And wit añ þe solempnyte and wirchipe þat myghte be done, he helped hym selfe for to bere þe bere, sare wepande, and gert þe Macedoynes & þe Percyenes gaa bi-fore þe bere. The persyenes also weped wonder faste, noȝte allanly for þe dede 24 of Darius, bot for petee of paire hertis, þat þay saw Alexander wepe so enterely. And wheñ Darius was beried Alexander went agayne to þe palace.

² And one þe morne Alexander went and sett hym in a trone 28 añ of golde & precyous stanes, the whilke Cyrus sumtyme gert * make þat was kyng of Perse. And the Macedoynes and þe Persyenes sett apoñ his hede a coroune þat was Darius, þe whilke was so precious, þat meñ knewe nane like it in na lande. ȝ2 For añ þe palace schane thurgh bryghtness of þe precyous stanes, þat were sett þare-in. And þe trone was añ of golde, & of precyous stanes, & of þe sege þare-offe was vii seuenð ³ cubeteȝ heghe fra þe grounde, and a grece of seuenð greeȝ was made ȝ6

¹ it written in above by the scribe.

² Two lines space with miniature A.

³ 'vii' occurs at the end of one line, and 'seven' at the beginning of the next.

pare-to, whare-by kynges ascended pare-to. And thir greez were made wonder craftyly & curiously. The firste gree was of ane amatist. The seconde gree was of a Smaragd. The thredd⁴ gree was of a Topaz. The ferthe gree was of a granat. The fifte was of ane adamand. The sext was of fynd golde. And the seuennt was of clay. And thay ware nozt¹ [wit-o]wtteñ grete cause; ordeyned oue þis wyse.

8 For þe first gree w[as a]ne² amatist, for amange all oper stanes it hase this vertu, that it represses & haldez donne þe fumositee of wyne & þe myghte pare-offe, & suffers nozte a mañ þat bere it³ oñ hym be troubled in his witt ne in his mynde
12 thurgh drownkeness. And, on þe same wise, solde ilke a kyng be of perfite witt & mynde, & thurgh nane occasion do na mysse. The secund gree was of a Smaragd, þe whilke clarifyez & kepez þe sighte of hym þat beres [it] apoñ hym, and so schulde
16 a kyng hafe clere sighte of his hert, wysely for to see & discerne that þat es spedfull & profitable bathe for hym selfe & for þe comon profit. The thirdd gree was of a Topaz, þe whilke es so clere, þat & a mañ bi-halde hym selfe pare-in, it sall seme
20 till hym, as his hede ware tournede downwardez, and his fete vpwardez; And it be-takenes þat a kyng schulde alway take hede till his laste ende. The ferthe gree was of a Granat whilk passez all manere of precious stanes in reedness: & betakens
24 þat a kyng suld be schamfull for till consent till any thyng þat es vnlefull. The fifte was of ane Adamande. Þe Adamande es so harde þat it may nozte be broken nowper with yreñ ne wit stane, bot if it firste be enoynted wit gayte blode. On þe same
28 wyse a kyng suld be of so grete constance & sadnesse þat, for na prayere, ne for na worldely gude, he solde nozte bewgh fra þe way of ryght-wisnesse. The sexte gree was of fyne gold: for rizte as gold passez all maner of metalle in bewtee, & in pre-
32 ciouste; rizte so a kyng awe to be⁴ preferred before oper meñ & governours of þañd. * Þe seuent was of Clay, till þat entent þat a mañ þat es raysed vp to þe dingnyte of a kyng sulde alway vmblythynk hym þat he was made of erthe, & at þe laste

The first step of amethyst, that a king be not drunken but walk soberly and steadfastly. The second of emerald, that a king see well those things which belong to his rank. The third of topaz, which reminds him of his latter end, showing him upside down. The fourth of garnet, which makes him shame to do unlawfully. The fifth of diamond, which means that a king should be righteous. The sixth of gold, to show the greatness of kings.
* Leaf 22 bk. The seventh of clay, to

¹ Piece gone in MS. Reads — *witten*. The beginning of a *w* occurs before the hole, and the latter half of an *o* after it— so it must clearly be read '*witowtten*'.

² MS. *w* and a *g*ap follows as 'above';

read, of course, '*was a-*'.

³ *it* written in above line.

⁴ MS. has in another hand in bottom of margin '*preferred before*' written over again.

show him
above all
he is but
dust and
deathly.

Alex-
ander's
letter to all
lands—ann-
ouncing
that he sits
on the
throne of
Darius.
He orders
that all
things
should be
as they
were
before.

He com-
mands
security of
tenure to
all, and free
trade be-
tween
Hellas and
all Persia.
Alexander
promises a
fitting re-
ward to
them that
slew
Darius.

They de-
clare them-
selves.

* Leaf 23.
Alexander
bids them
be taken

to þe erthe he saff agayne. When Alexander was sett apoñ this trone, coronnde wīt his diademe, & þe Macedoyne & þe persenes standyng abowte hym: be-fore þaīd alle he gert write a *lettre* till all cuntreez, þat was of this tenour.

¹ 'Alexander the soñ of godd' Amoñ & qwene Olympias kyng of kynges & lorde of lordes, till alle Dukes, Pryncez, Erles, Barons, maisters, & till all þe folkez of Perse: ioy & grace. Señ it es plesynge to godd, þat I sitt one þe trone of Darius, & be lorde of þe persyenes, grete cause I hafe for to be reioyist gretely þare-offe, ne were it for þe gret multitude of folke þat ere slayne. Bot señ it so es þat godd' hase ordeynede me to be your lorde,² and your *gouernour*, þare-fore we commande you þat in ilke a citee, thurghowte þe lordchipe of Perse, 3e ordeyne prynces and *gouernours* as þare was in Darius tyme, to þe whilke we commande you þat 3e be obeyande as 3e before-tymes hafe bene, and that þay do rizte till ilke a mañ at þaire powere. Also it es oure will and oure commandement, þat ilke a mañ welde & reioyse paysabily his landes and his possessiouns. We commande alsoo, þat fra this lande of perse vn-till Ellada, & fra thethyñ to Macedoyne, be redy way & open so þat ilke a mañ þat will may passe bathe in and owte, wīt merchandyse or any oper erandes þat þay hafe at do, and Joy & pese be vn-to youe.'

³ þan gert Alexander all meñ be still, and said one this wyse: 'Whilke of you so slew myñ enemy Darius; comez forthe be-for me, and I shaft giffe you worthy mede, & conable wirchipe do þaīd, I swere bi oure goddez þat ere Almyzty, & bi my moste biloved' moder Olympias, þat I saff gyffe þaīd worthy mede.' When Alexander had saide thir wordes þe persyenes wepede wonderly sare. And thañ þe twa mañ-morthireres Bisso and Aryobarzantes come bi-fore Alexander, and sayde vn-till hym: 'Wirchipfull *emperour*,' quop þay, 'we ere thase þat slew Darius thyne enemy wīt oure Awenñ hende.' And when Alexander saw þaīd, he bade his knyghtes belyfe ga & take þaīd, & bynde * þam, & lede þaīd to Darius grafe, & þare smyte of þaire heuedes. And thañ þay ansuerd, & saide vn-till Alexander: 'A, A, wirchipfull *emperour*,' quop þay, 36

¹ Ten lines blank space for a miniature.
² In MS. between 'be your lorde' and 'and your *gouernour*' is written '& lorde

of þe persyenes', but it has been erased by the scribe.

³ Three lines space with red capital p.

‘swore þou noȝte tiſt vs, bi oure goddeȝ þat ere Almyȝty, & bi þe hele of thi moder Olympias, þat þou ſolde gerre do vs na harme, bot þat þou ſolde giff vs a worthi reward.’ And
 4 Alexander ſaide agayne vn-to þam: ‘So aughte me wele for to ſwere, for to gette knawying of þe ſlaers of Darius. For I ſolde neuer hafe getyñd knawying þare-offe had I noȝte ſworne ſo. And
 8 ȝitt I ſall ſafe myñd athe wele ynoghe. For it was al-way myñd entent, þat if I myȝte wete what þay ware, þay ſolde hafe ſwilke a rewarde. For þay þat ſlaes þaire awenñd lorde it es a taken þat þay wiſt hafe na conſcience to ſla anoþer mañ.’ And
 12 when þe perseyenes herde this þay by-gañd to prayſe Alexander & to commende hym and blyſſe hym as he had bene a godd. þam kyng Alexander gert hede tha twa homycydes. And aſt þe rewme he ſett in gouernance of certayne lordes. Amanges oper þare was ane alde lorde was cme to Darius, þe whilke
 16 highte Climitus, þat was gretly luffede wið þe perſyenes; And Alexander at þe request of aſt the perſyenes ordeyned hym for to be chefe gouernour vnder hym of aſt perſe. And one þe morne Alexander ſett hym in his trone, wið his corouñd on his hede,
 20 and eſter þe bidding of Darius he commande to brynge bi-fore hym Roſañ, Darius doghter, wið a corouñd oñd hir hede, ſett full of precious ſtanes. And þare, as þe maner was of þe perſyenes, he tuke hir to his wyfe, and made hir to ſitt wið hym in his
 24 trone & command aſt meñd to wirchipe hir als quene. And þam þe perſyenes were wonderly glade, & onane þay broȝte þaire goddeȝ bi-fore Alexander, and bi-gañd to wirchipe hym, & loue hym riȝte als he hade bene a godd, and ſaid vn-till hym,
 28 hallely wið a voyce, ‘þou thi ſelfe es a godd, For that þat es plesande tiſt oure goddes alway þou doſe.’ And when Alexander ſaw this, he was gretly troubled & riȝte ferde & ſaid vn-to þam: ‘Wirchipfull ſirs,’ quop he, ‘I pray ȝow þat ȝe
 32 wirchipe me noȝte as a godd, for ſothely I am as ȝe are, a corrupteble & a dedly mañ, and in me þare es na parcell of the godhede. And þarefore, I beſeke ȝow, ceſſeȝ of this wirchipe þat ȝe do me.’
 36 1 þan gert Alexander write a lettre tiſt Olympias his moder & tiſt Arestotle his maister, makand mencyoñd of aſt þe batayſis & þe diſeſſeȝ þat he hadd ſuffred in Perſe, and of þe grete reches

and be-headed. They plead his own words. But it avails them nought.

They are slain. Alexander makes Darius' uncle governor of the Persians.

Alexander weds Roxana, Darius' daughter.

The Persians worship Alexander as a god.

He chides them for it.

Alexander writes to his mother and to Aristotle.

1 Five lines with large capital p.

He com-
*Leaf 23
bk.
mands an
eight days'
feast for
the mar-
riage.

Alexander
marches
against
Porus of
India,
through
waste
country,
with great
rivers and
caverns.
The Mace-
donians
murmur at
the contin-
ued
wars and
marches,
and against
Alex-
ander's
ambition.
They fain
would
leave him.

King Alex-
ander
divides the
Mace-
donians
and the
Persians.

Alexander
rebukes the
Greeks
that they
would
leave him
alone with
rebellious
Persians.
He reminds
them of
what he
has done

pat he fandē pare, of þe whilke he & all his men were made riche. And also he wroto vn-to þam,* þat þay scholde make grete solempnytee lastyng aghte dayes be-cause of þe weddyng of Alexander & Rosañ Darius doghter. And so did Alexander, 4 in Perse, wit þe macedoynes & þe persyenes, many a daye.

¹ After this kyng Alexander sembled a grete Oste, bathe of macedoynes & of persyenes, and went towarde Inde for to werre apoñ Porus, kyng of Inde, þe whilke ordeynede hym for to 8 come & helpe kyng Darius. And, when Alexander was entered in-tiff Inde, he went thurgh wildernes & waste cuntree, whare in ware grete reuers and many grete caues & cauernes. And þañ Alexander & his men wex wery, & irkede rihte sare. And 12 þe prynces of macedoyne & of grece murmourede amange þam gretly, & saide ilkañ tiff oþer: 'It myzte hafe sufficed tiff vs, þat we hafe ouer-sett kyng Darius, & conqerred þe kyngdom of Perse. Where-be seke we forthire in-tiff Inde, þe whilke es 16 full of wilde bestez, and leues oure awenñ landez. Ne þis Alexander nane oþer thynges desyre, bot for to wende abowte and thurgh werre to brynge all þe worlde vndere his subieccion. For werre & debate unresche þis body so fer furth þat, and he 20 ristede any lange tyme witowten werre, rihte als it were for defaute of mete he schulde faile & dye. Leue we hym þarefore, and turne we agayne vn-tiff oure awenñ cuntree, and late hym wende furthe wit the persyenes, if he wiff.' When 24 Alexander herde þis, he garte all þe Oste habide, and he went and stodde in ane heghe place amange þam, & sayde one this wise: 'Departis þow in twaa, so þat þe persyenes be by þañ-selfe and þe Macedoynes and þe grekes bi þañ-selfe.' 28 And when þay hadd' so done, Alexander saide to þe Macedoynes and þe grekes: 'A A, myne owenñ dere knyghtis,' quof he, 'wele [þe] knawe þat thir persyenes, vn-to þis day, hase bene con- 32 trary & rebelles vn-to þow & to me, and þe wiff now lese me here wit þam, and tourne agayne to þour awenñ cuntree. Wele þe wate, þat when þour hertes were troublede, & fered, for þe wordes þat ware contened in Darius lettres, I thurgh my speche & my conseñ comforthed þour hertis. And afterwarde, when we 36 come in-to þe felde agaynes oure enemys, I went bi-fore þow all.

¹ Four lines with miniature A with a springing from it. Small a written in the barrel drawn within on its side, and a tree margin beside it.

And I by mynd anc was þe firste mañ þat entrede þe batayle.
 And 3itt more-ouer, as 3e wele wate, I tuke apoñ me for to be
 3oure allere messangere vn-to kyng Darius. And þare, for
 4 3ow, I putt my selfe in many grete * perills. And þarefore,
 witte3 wele for certayne, þat, rizte as hedirtowarde3, we hafe
 ouercomeñ oure enemys and hade þe better of þañ, rizte so fro
 hepein-forwarde3, thurgh þe helpe of oure godde3 we sañ ouer-
 8 come oure enemys, & hafe þe victorie of þañ. And þarefore I
 say 3ow forsothe, þat, all if 3e will tourne agayne to grece &
 macedoyne, I sañ no3te tourne agayne oñ na wyse, þat 3e may
 knawe þat, wit-owtten̄ gouernance of a kyng, nane Oste may
 12 wynne na wirchipe.' Wheñ Alexander had said þus, all þe
 prynce3 of Macedoyne and of þe grekes schamede gretely, and
 askede mercy & forgifnesse, sayande one this wyse: 'Moste
 wirchippull emperour, oure lyfe lyes hallely in 3our hande.
 16 Whedir so euer 3e will goo we will gladly felowe 3our hye
 maiestee; þofe we schulde all dye for 3ow oñ a daye, we sañ
 folow 3ow & neuer lese 3ow.' And þañ þay remoued fra þeinne¹
 and come in-till a cuntree of Inde þat es called Phisiaceñ, in þe
 20 laste ende of July. And þare mette hym þe embassatours of
 Porus kyng of Inde, and broghte hym lettres fra Porus, þat said
 oñ this wyse.

² Porus kyng of Inde: vn-to þe theeffe Alexander, þat thurgh
 24 thifte & robbery many citee3 wynne3, bidding we send. Señ
 þou ert dedely: wharto wene3 þou þat þou ert of powere to
 agaynstande godd þat es vn-dedely. A grete fole, me thynke,
 þou ert þat hase eghne, and cane nott see. Trowes þou we be lyke
 28 vn-to þe pereyenes þat þou hase made subiecte3 vn-to the? Þou
 hase foughten̄ hedir-towarde wit softe meñ & cowarde3, & for
 þou hase ouercomeñ þañ, þou wene3, þat thi littillness sañ
 brynge oure hye maiestee vnder thi subieccion; þe whilke es
 32 vnpossyble for to bee, bot if godde3 submytt þañ vn-to meñ,
 and þe erthe be euen lyke to þe heuen. I late the wiete, þat I
 may no3te be ouercommen̄ for no3te allanly meñ bot also godde3
 doee3 seruyce to my name. Wate þou no3te wele, þat ane
 36 Dynise, þe fader of Bachus, come in-till Inde, wit a grete Oste
 for to feghte, bot onane he tournede þe bakke & fledd, for he

for them,
 and what
 they will
 do to-
 gether.

* Leaf 24.

But what-
 ever they
 do, he will
 go on-
 wards.

They be-
 come
 ashamed of
 themselves
 and beg for
 forgive-
 ness.

They con-
 tinue their
 march and
 meet the
 ambas-
 sadors of
 Porus.

Porus'
 letter to
 Alexander.

He tells
 him of the
 superiority
 of the
 Indians to
 the Per-
 sians.

The gods
 also fight
 for India.
 The
 Indians
 overcame
 Dionysius.

¹ MS. reads *þeiñe*.

² Four lines space for miniature *P*. *P* written in the page beside it.

He advises him to go back again to Macedonia. Before Xerxes' time the Macedonians gave tribute to India, but the Indians recked

* Leaf 24 bk.

naught of Macedonia, for it was a barren and little land.

Alexander's knights are troubled at the letter.

He tells them Eastern folks are like wild beasts trusting but in their strength.

Alexander's letter to Porus. Porus' words have stirred on the Greeks to win so great and fruitful a land as India, as well as to crush Porus' pride. For Porus is but a

was nozte of powere to agaynstande þe vertu of meñ of Inde. And þarefore, or any schame or mischeffe comð to þe; we counsel the & commandeþ the, þat in all þe haste þat þou may, þou tourne hame agayne to thyne awenð lande. Fore wele þou 4 knowes, þat, bi-fore 3erses was kynge of Perse, þe macedoynes gaffe tribute till Inde. Bot, by-cause þat þaire lande es barayne & vnprofitable, & na thynges þer-in plesande till a kynge: þe meñ of Inde sett nozte þare-by. For ilke a mañ, 8 desyres mare a large lande & a plenteuous: þan *a strayte lande & a barayne. And þarefore, 3itt the thirde tourne, I comaunde the that þou tourne hame to thyne awenð lande. And neuer, in thi lyfe, couette to hafe Lordschipe þare þou may nane gete.' 12

¹ When þis *lettre* was comeñ till Alexander, he gerte rede it be-fore all meñ. And when his knyghtis hadð herde þe tenour of þis *lettre*, þay were trublede. And Alexander sayde vn-to þaïð: 'My wirchippfull knyghtis,' quop he, 'late nozte 3our 16 hertis be trublede ne feredð for Porus *lettre*. Hafe 3e nozte in mynde, wit how grete pride Darius wrate vn-till vs dyuerse tymes? I say 3ow sotheley þat all þe folke of thyse Este parties hase þaire hertis & þaire wittis lyke vn-to þe bestes þat þay 20 duesse wit-all, þat es at say, Tygres, Pardes, & oþer wilde bestis, whilke full selden ere slaenð of meñ, and þare-fore þay triste all in þaire strengthe.' And when Alexander hade said thir wordes, he garte writte a *lettre* vn-to Porus kynge of Inde 24 whare-of this was the tenour.

² 'Kynge of kynges and lorde of lordes, Alexander þe soñ of godd' Amoñ & þe quene Olympias, vn-to Porus we sende. Þou hase scharpede oure wittes, & gyffed vs hardynesse for to feghte 28 agaynes þe, whare þou says þat macedoyne es bot a littill lande & barayne of all thyng þat gude es. And Inde, þou says, es large, & plenteuous of all gudeþ & reches. And þare-fore we sail enforce vs to feghte wit the at all oure myghte, for to con- 32 quere thi landes þat, þou sais, es so full of reches. And, for þou haldez vs pouer, & of na reputacioñ, þare-fore we desire for to ascende to þe heghte of thi majestie. And also þare þou says, þat nozte allanly vn-to meñ, bot also vn-to goddes þou erte 36 emperour, I sail come to the, for to feght wit þe, as wit añ

¹ Three lines with miniature IV and small *w* written alongside in the margin.

² Eleven lines blank space without either miniature or small letter at side.

haytheið mañ full of Pompe & pride and vayne glory, & noʒte
 as wit a godd. For all þe werlde may noʒte ¹agaynstand þe
 wrethe of a godd. Þer-fore, seið þe elementis of this aere, þat
 4 es at say Thunners, leueyngez and water, may noʒte bere þe
 indygnacion of goddez, how schulde þañ dedely meñ mowe
 agaynstande þaire wrethe? And þare-fore I late the * wele
 witte þat þi founde proudde speche troublez me noʒte ne mouez
 8 me neuer a dele.'

² Wheñ Porus hadd this lettre, he was wondere wrathe &
 assemblede a grete Oste of meñ, and a grete multitude of
 Olyphanntes wit þe whilke þe meñ of Inde ere wount for to
 12 feghte, and went agaynes Alexander. This Oste of Porus was
 riʒte grete & strange, for þare ware þer in xiiij. cartes of were
 and viij^c Oliphantez, and ilk an Olyphante hadd a toure of tree
 apoñ his bakke, & in ilke a toure xxx meñ. Þare ware also
 16 oper feghting meñ on horse and on fote wit-owten nowmer.
 And wheñ þe Macedoynes and þe persyenes sawe þe grete
 multitude bathe of meñ & of Olyphauntez, þay were fered, &
 gretely stonayde. Neuer þe lesse, bathe þe partyes ordayned
 20 þañ to bateñ, and arayed þaire bateñs, Alexander on his syde,
 and Porus on his syde. And Alexander lepe vp-oñ his horse
 Buktiphalas & prikkede bi-fore all his meñ, and comanded,
 þat þe Medoynes & þe persyenes sulde firste begynñ to feghte.
 24 And so þay did; & hym selfe wit þe grekes, and þe macedoynes
 stode on þe toþer syde, redy to succour þañ wheñ myster ware.
 And for þe Olyphauntez also, Alexander gert make suylike añ
 ordynance. He gert make xxiiij ymagez of brasse, and gert fill
 28 þañ full of dry wodde. And he gerte make also cartes of yreñ,
 for to bere thir ymagez before þe Olyphauntez and wheñ þe
 Ostez came nere to-gedir he gert sett fyre in þe wodd þat was in
 þe ymages. And wheñ þe Olyphauntez saw þir ymages, þay
 32 wende þat þay hadd bene meñ and schott owte þaire groynes,
 as þay were wount for to do for tiff hafe weryed þañ. And
 alsone thurgh þe grete hete, þay were brynned and thañ thay
 gaffe bakke, & fledd for drede to brynne þaire groynes. And
 36 þare-fore þe meñ þat were abowñ in þe toures myghte noʒte
 wyñ to for to feghte. And wheñ Porus saw that he was reghte

heathen
 man full of
 pride.
 He
 threatens
 him with
 the wrath
 of the gods.

* Leaf 25.

Porus is
 angered at
 the letter
 and
 gathers a
 great army
 with
 elephants.
 Its
 numbers
 and array.

Alex-
 ander's
 allies are
 startled by
 the appear-
 ance of the
 elephants
 and the
 Indian
 army.

Alex-
 ander's
 device for
 over-
 coming the
 elephants.

¹ *agaynstand* written in the margin, with a
 mark of insertion over against it in the text.

² Four lines space with red capital *W*.
 Small *w* in margin next it.

The allies begin the battle and fight for thirty days.

When exhausted they are re-

* Leaf 25 bk.

placed by the Greeks and Macedonians.

Utter defeat of the Indians and flight of Porus.

Siege and capture of Porus' city. The riches of Porus' palace.

The walls were plated with gold an inch thick.

The palace gates were of ivory and ebony.

The wonders of the hall. The golden birds that sang as though alive.

sary. þaṁ þe Medoynes & þe persyenes, wit arowes and speres & oper dyuerse wapynes of werre, slewe thykfalde of þe meṁ of Inde. And thus þay faghte contenuelly xxx^{ti} days, & mekiṁ pople of bathe þe parties ware dede. And at þe laste þe 4 Medoynes, & þe persyenes, begaṁ faste for to fayle. And wheṁ Alexander saw that, he was wondere wrathe, and entrede in-to þe bateṁ, sittand' on his horse Buctiphalas, *and faghte mann- 8 fully, & þe grekes & þe macedoynes wit hym. And his horse also helped' hym gretely. And thaṁ belyfe þe Indynes begaṁ gretely for to fayle. And wheṁ Porus saw that he turned' þe bakke & fledd'. And þaṁ þe Indynes þat ware lefte oṁ lyfe fledd' also. And Alexander lugeṁ hym thare wit his Oste and 12 made Sacrafice till his goddeꝝ and commaunded' for to bery þe dedd' bodys, bathe of Indynes & of þe persyenes & þe Macedoynes.

¹ Sone after, apouṁ a day, Alexander ensegged' Porus citee & 16 wanṁ it, and went in-till Porus Palace, where-In he fande² mare riches þaṁ any maṁ wiṁ trowe. For he fande þare-in xⁱ pelers of Massy golde, ilkaṁ of a grete thikness & a grete lenthe, wit þaire chapytraṁles. And bitwene þe pelers of golde, 20 ware hyngande venetteꝝ of golde & syluere, wit leues of golde. And þe brawncheꝝ of this venett ware suṁ of cristalle, suṁ of Margariteꝝ, suṁ of Smaragdes, & suṁ of Onyches, and þay semed' as þay hade bene verrey vynes. Þe walles also of þe 24 palace ware couerde all ouer wit plates of golde, þe whilke wheṁ þe Macedoynes cutte in soundre & brakke, þay fande þat þay ware a gret ynche thikke. And þir walles ware sett full of diuerse precious stanes, þat es at say, of charebuncles, Smaragdes, 28 Margarites & Amatistes. And þe zates of þe Palace ware of Euour wonder whitt, & þe bandeꝝ of þaṁ, & þe legges of Ebene. Þe chambirs, also, of þis Palace, were all of Cipresse, and þe beddeꝝ in þaṁ ware sett full of Margariteꝝ, Smaragdeꝝ, & 32 charebuncles. Þe hauṁ, also, of þis Palace, was sett full of ymages of golde, & bi-twix þaṁ stode perlatanes of golde, in þe branches of whilke þare were many manners of fewles & ilke a fewle was colourede, & paynted' after his kynde asked, þe 36 bekes of þaṁ, & þe clowes ware all of fyne golde. And ay,

¹ Four lines with red capital ornate S, and small s in margin beside.

² MS. repeats *he fande* twice.

when Porus liste, thir fewles thurgh crafte of music walde syng after paire kynde askede & was. He fande also in þat Palace veselles wit-owten nowmer, sum of golde, sum of Cristaffe, 4 Sum of oper maneres of precyouse stanes, sum of Suluere, and þat all maner of vesell þat men sulde be serued offe. Bot þare were bot fewe of þam of Siluere.

The riches of the treasury. There is but little silver.

¹ Fra thethyñ, Alexander remowede his Oste & come to þe 8 gates of Caspee, and þare he lused hym. It was a noble lande & a gude. Bot þare ware þare-In many maners * of nedders and of wilde bestez. Fra þeine Alexander sent a lettre till Talifride quene of Amazon, of þis tenour.

* Leaf 26.

12 ² 'Kyng of kynges, and lorde of lordes, Alexander, þe soñ of godd Amoñ, & þe quene Olympias, vn-to Talifride þe quene of Amazon, ioy. The grete Batayles þat we hafe hadd wit kyng Darius, & how we hafe conquered all his rewme, and his 16 lordchipes, we trowe be noghte unknaweñ vn-to 3ow. And also how we hafe foghten with Porus þe kyng of Inde & his cheeffe citee wonneñ. And also wit many oper folkes, & þay ware neuer of powere to agaynstande vs, þe wilke we suppose 20 be nozte vnknaweñ vn-to 3owe. Whare-fore we sende 3ow worde, & commande 3ow, þat 3e sende vs tribute, if 3e wilt þat wee com nozte to 3ow to do 3ow disesse.'

Alexander's letter to the Queen of the Amazons mentioning his victories and demanding tribute.

And vn-to this lettre Talifride made ansuere by lettre one this 24 wyse.

The answer of the Queen of the Amazons. She has heard of his victory. She warns him of the danger of attacking the Amazons.

3 ³ 'Talyfride quene of Amazon wit oper grete ladys of oure rewme, vn-till Alexander, kyng of Macedoyne, joy. We hafe wele herde tesse of þe hye witt þat es in the, thurgh wilke þou 28 hase in mynde thynges þat ere passede, and dispose thynges þat ere present, and knawe thynges þat ere to come. Avyse the wele þarefore are þou come till vs, what trebulacionez & disesse may falle the in thi commynge. For þare was neuer 32 nane 3it þat werreyed agayne vs þat ne he had schame þare-offe at þe ende. And þare-fore take hede to thi last ende. For grete schame it es till a wyse mañ thurgh indiscreioñ to falle in mescheffe. Bot if it be lykyng to þe, to knawe our con- 36 uersacyoñ, and oure habitacioñ, we declare it vn-to þe be oure

She describes their land

¹ Three lines with miniature capital *F* and small *f* beside in the margin.

² Four lines with ornate capital *K* and small *k* in margin beside.

³ Twelve lines space for miniature which is lacking. Written in the margin is 'Regina Talibus cum duabus astantibus'.

and their manners. They are in an island girdled round by a river. The men dwell on the other side of the river. How they breed their kind.

* Leaf 26 bk.

How they ride to war.

Their husbands honour them at their return. They will fight Alexander, who will get no honour through victory over women, but rather if he be overthrown, to the women shall it be great honour, to him great shame. Alexander laughs and sends them another letter, telling them that he has conquered three parts of the world and never been withstood.

present *lettres*, þat oure *habitacio*n es in ane Ile, þat es closede abowte wit a grete reuer þat noþer hase bygynnyng nor endynnge. Bot on a syde we hafe a straye entree. And the nowmer of women þat duellez þer-in es ccciiii^m þat ere nozte 4 filed wit meñ. For oure husbandez duellez nozte amangez vs ne no noþer mañ, Bot on þe toper syde of þe reuer. And ilke a zere we make a solempne feste in the wirchipe of Iubiter xxx days. And þañ we go till oure husbandez, and duellez 8 wit þañ oþer xxx dayes & hase oure luste and oure disporte * to-gedir as kynde askes. And if any of vs consayfe & bere a childe if it be a male þe modere kepis it seuē zere and thañ sendez it to þe fadere. And if scho bere a maydeñ 12 childe þe moder haldez it wit hir & techez it oure maners. Wheñ we goo to werre agayne zoure enemys we ere c^m rydañd one horse wele armede. And suñ of vs hase bowes & arowes, and suñ speres, and oþer diuerse waypne. And þe remanent 16 kepez oure Ile. And wheñ we come wit the victorye oure husbandez does vs grete wirchipe. And þare-fore if þou come agaynes vs we late the witt þat we will feghte wit the at all oure myzte. And if it happen þat þou hafe þe victory of vs, 20 wirchipe sañ it nane be to the bi-cause þou hase discomfit women. And if we discomfit the, it sañ be an heghe wirchippe till vs, þat we may discomfit so wirchippull an emperour; and to the it sañ be a hye reprove. Where-fore we sygnifie vn-to 24 þe by oure *lettres* þat þou come nozte agaynes vs for sekerly þare may grete dysese come þare-offe, þat perauenture þou knawe3 nozte now offe at þis tymme.'

Wheñ Alexander hadd' redd' þis *lettre*, he began to lawghe. 28 And onane he garte writte an oþer *lettre*, and sent it to Talyfride, whare-offe þe tenour was this.

¹ 'Alexander kyng of kynges and of lordez, the soñ of godd' Amoñ & þe qwene Olympias, to Talyfride quene of Amazon 32 and þe oþer ladys of þe same rewme: ioi. We late zow weite þat thre parties of þe werlde, þat es to say, Asye, Affric, & Europe we hafe conquered and made subiects vn-till vs, & þare was neuer nane of þañ þat myzte agaynstande oure powere. 36 And if we now suld nozte be of powere, to feghte with zowe it ware ane heghe schame till us. Neuer-þe-lesse for als mekiñ

¹ Thirteen lines blank space for a miniature.

als we lufe *your conuersacion* we conseil þat ze come¹ forthe of
your Ile & your husbondez wit *zow*, and appere in oure
 presence. For we swere *zow* bi god² Amond oure Fader, & by
 4 all oure goddez þat ze sall hafe na disesse of vs. Bot gyffe³ vs
 sumwhat in name of tribute and we schall fynd *zow* and *zoure*
Amazonns þat come * wit *zow* horse ynowe. And when *zou*
 listees for to wende hame agayne, ze schall hafe gude leue.⁴
 8 And when þe Amazons hadd⁵ redd⁶ þis *lettre*, þay went to
 conseil, and thoghte it was beste for to ascent vn-till hym.
 And það þay sent hym x stedes þe beste þat myzte be funden
 in any cuntree, and x oper horse þe beste þat myzte be geten,
 12 and a grete sunn of golde. And Talifride hir selfe and oper
 ladys wit hir went un-till hym, and accorded⁷ wit hym, and
 went hame agayne, wonder glade and blythe.

² In þe mene tyme it was talde Alexander, þat Porus, þe kyng
 16 of Inde, was in Bactricen, and assembled⁸ a grete Oste for to
 feglite eftsonns wit hym. And when Alexander herde this, he
 remowede his Oste, and chese owte c.l of duyeres þat knewe þe
 cuntree, for to hafe þe gouernance of his Oste, and to lede það
 20 seurlly thurgh þat strange cuntree. In þe Monethe of Auguste,
 when þe sonn es maste hate, þay bigan for to take þaire iournee.
 And thay went thurgh a dry cuntree, sandye, & wit-owtten
 water. And nedlynge⁹ það byhoued¹⁰ wende armede, þare was
 24 so grete plentee of neddirs, and cruell¹¹ wylde bestes. For
 thies forsaid gydez ware mare fauorable to Porus, það till
 Alexander & his Oste, and þare-fore þay ledd¹² það thurgh
 swilke barrayne and perilous cuntreez. And when Alexander
 28 saw it schope thus, and that his conseil byfore had sayd þe sothe,
 þat es at say, bathe his awn frende¹³ and men of Caspy, þat
 conseld¹⁴ hym þat he suld nozte hye hym ouerfaste, ne triste to
 mekill to stranzgers; þan he commanded¹⁵ þat all men schulde
 32 wende armed: & so þay did. And það all þe Oste schane rizte
 as it had bene sternes, for sum of þaire armours ware of golde,
 sunn of siluer, and sunn of precious stanes. And when Alexander
 saw þe araye of his Oste, and þaire baners bi-fore það
 36 Schynande so faire, he was rizte gladde. Neuer-þe-les grete
 disese he hadd¹⁶, þat nowþer he, ne his men, myzte fynde na water.

He summons them before him and advises them to give tribute.

* Leaf 27.

The Amazons assent to the terms of the letter.

Alexander moves his army against Porus through the desert in the month of August. The desert is waterless and full of snakes and wild beasts, for the guides were favourable to Porus. Alexander then remembers the wise words of his council. They all go armed, so that the whole army gleams like the stars, with banners and a shining mail.

¹ MS. *cone*.

² Six lines with miniature *I*, covering with

its foliage three-quarters of the margin.

³ *wh* turned into *wy*.

A Macedonian knight finds water in a hollow and brings it to Alexander in his helmet. Alexander refuses it lest he alone of all go refreshed. He

*Leaf 27 bk.

casts it down upon the rocks and goes without, so that all his followers are comforted as though they had drunken water.

On the morrow they come to a river with reeds on its banks as high as pine trees. They drink of the water; it slew many of them with a flux.

Alexander is greatly distressed, not only for his knights but also for the many beasts of burden that bear their things, and the flocks and herds that go with them.

So it felle þat a knyghte of Macedoyne þat hyzte zephilus fand' water standynge in an holle stane, þat was gadird þare of þe dewe of þe heuen, the whilke þis forsaide knyghte putt in his Bacenett, & brozthe it tilf Alexander for to drynke. And 4 Alexander saide un-till hym, 'I suppose,' quop he, 'þat I drynke þis water, sall þe Macedoynes & þe persyenes be any thyng refreschede þareby, or I sall hafe all þe refreschyng be my selfe.' And he ansuerd, & saide, 'Þou aft' ane lorde,' quop he, 'sall be 8 comforthed þareby.' Quop Alexander þa, 'And * if ze¹ sall aft' perische trowes þou þat it solde be lykand' to mee, for to lyfe in sorowe & disese seyng þe dedd of þe Macedoynes & þe persyenes?' And be-lyue he garte helle downu þe water on þe 12 erthe be-fore aft' his men. And wheu his knyghtis saw that, þay were hugely comforthede þare-by rihte als Ilkañ of þa, hadd' dronken a grete draughte of water, and þa went furthe þaire waye. And on þe morne, þay come tilf a reuere whase 16 bankes was growand' full of grete redys & þay ware als hye as pyne-treese; 3a, for þe maste partie of x^l fote lange. Than badd' [he] that þay drawe of þe water and bryng to þe Oste. Bot aft' þat dranke þare-offe it keste þa in-till a flux, and slewe 20 a grete hepe of þam. For þat water was wonder scharpe, and als bittire als any mekill gyse. Bot þa was Alexander gretly disessedd' & aft' his Oste nozte allanly of þa-selfe, bot also for þaire horsez & þaire bestez þat þay ledd' wit' þa þe whilke bi-ga 24 for to faile for thyrste. Alexander hadd' wit' hym a thowsande Olyphantez þat bare his golde, And foure hundreth cartes of werre and jm & cc waynez. He hadd' also in his Oste ccc^m horse men and muyles & camelles witowteu nowmer, þat bare þaire 28 vetails, and oper thynges þat was necessarye to þe Oste; also oxen and kye, schepe and swyne, wit-owteu nowmer, þe whilke perischt for defaute of drynke. Sum of Alexander knyghtes lykked' Ireu, Sum dranke oyle, & sum ware at so grete meschefe 32 þat þay dranke þaire awen stalyng. And thare was so grete habundance of nedders & oper venymous bestez, þat þam by-houed' nede; trauelle armed, and þat was a grete nuy to þam & a ã heghe disese. Þa was Alexander wonder² sorye & namely 36 for þe disese þat his Oste suffrede.

¹ On first side of leaf 27 ze sall is written, but on the second side ze schal.

² MS. undoubtedly reads *worder*, but one must substitute *wonder*.

¹ And as þay went endlande þis reuere, abowte þe viii houre
of þe day, þay come till a castell þat stode in a littill Ile in þis
forsaid ryuere; And this castell was made of þe forsaide redez.
4 Þe brede of this ryuer was foure furlange lenth. And in þat
castell þay save a few meñ. And þan Alexander bad his meñ
spirre þan þat ware in þe castell in þe langage of Inde whare
þay myghte fynde any swete watir able for to drynke. And
8 also soñ als þay spake to þan þay with-drewe þan & hidd.
And Alexander gerte schotte arowes in-to þe castell and þan
þay hidd þan wele þe mare. And when Alexander saw *that
þay walde oue na wyse speke wit hym, he hadd a certane of his
12 knyghtes nakne þam & swyme ouer þe water to þe castell. And
þan xxxvii balde knyghtis & hardy of Macedoyne nakned þan,
and tuke ilkan of þan a swerde in his hande & went in-to þe
water & swame it to þay were passede þe ferthe parte þare-offe.
16 And sodeynly thare rase oute of þe water a grete multitude
of bestez, þat ere called ypotaynes, grettere of body than and
olyphant, and deuored thir knyghtis euer-ilkanne. And þan
was Alexander rihte sare greuede, and be-lyfe garte take þe
20 forsaide guydez cl & caste þan in-to þe water. And onane
þe ypotaynes deuored þam.
And Alexander thoghte it was nozte spedfull langare to stryffe
wit thase monstres, and garte tromppe vp and remowed his
24 Oste fra þeine, and went so all þat day wondere very for thriste.
And also þay hadd grete disese & nuye of wilde ² Beste þat come
apon þan, þat es to say, of lyones, beres, vncornes, tygres,
and pardez, wit þe whilke þay faughte & grete traueñ hade.
28 ³ And as þay went on þis wyse wit grete angere & disese
aboute þe elleued houre þay saw a littill bate in þe riuere made
of rede and meñ rowande þare-in. And Alexander gert spirre
þan in þe langage of Inde, whare þay myzte fynde any fresche
32 water. And þay talde whare & schewed þan a place a littill
þeine whare-in þay saide þay scholde fynde a grete staunke of
swete water and gude. And þan Alexander & hys Oste went
all aboute þat ryuere, & come till þis forsaide stanke and lused
36 þan aboute it. And Alexander comanded þat þay sulde felle

In what
fearful
ways his
knights try
to quench
their
thirst.
Going
along the
banks they
come to a
little isle
with a
castle,

* Leaf 28.

wherein are
men who
will give
them no
answer.
Alexander
bids
certain of
his knights
swim the
stream.
They swim
the river,
but are de-
voured by
hippopo-
tami.
Alexander
throws the
guides into
the river
and they
are de-
voured
also.
They travel
onwards
greatly
worried by
wild beasts.
At the
eleventh
hour they
meet a
small boat
whose crew
direct them
to a great
pond of
freshwater.
They camp
round the

¹ Four lines with miniature *A* and small *a* written in MS. margin beside.

² of deleted by the scribe before *Beste*.

³ Four lines with red capital *A* and small *a* in the MS. margin beside.

pond. Alexander bids that they fell a great wood of huge reeds that grow around it.

When the moon rises a great crowd of scorpions come down to drink.

And there come snakes also and many-hued dragons.

These have crested heads with

* Leaf 28 bk.

golden breasts and open mouths.

Their breath slew any quick thing it smote upon and out of their eyes came fiery flames.

Alexander comforts his frightened knights.

Alexander shows how to fight them with nets, and slays many of them.

How many men of Alexander fell thereby.

The wondrous crabs that then attack them.

Then come white Lions

a wood þat growed faste þare-by three myle on lenthe, & alls mekilñ on brede. Þat wodde was all of þe redez þat I spak of bi-fore, and þe stanke was a myle oñ lenth. Það Alexander comanded þat þay sulde make many fires in þe Oste, and gerte 4 trompe to þe mete. And alsoñ þe mone be-gañ to schynne þare come a grete multitude of scorpyons to-warde þe stanke for to take það a drynke. And það þare come oper manere of nedders, and dragones wonder grete of dyuerse colours. 8 And all þat cuntree resounded of þe noyse & þe hissingez þat þay made. Þir dragones come dounne fra þe hye mountaynes for to drynke of þe stanke, and þay hadd crestis one þaire heddez & þaire bresteþ ware bryghte lyk golde, & þaire 12 mowthes open. Þaire aande slewe any qwikk thyng þat it smate apoiñ, and oute of þaire eghne þare come flammes of fyre. And when Alexander & his Oste saw það þay ware riþt *fered for það. For þay wende þay schulde hafe weried það 16 ilkañ. And það Alexander comforthed það and saide vn-to það: 'Mi wirchipfull knyghtes,' quop he, 'bees nozte agaste of það, bot does ilkane as þe see me do.' And það he tuk a nett & sett it bi-twixe hym & það and tuke his schelde & his spere 20 & faughte wit það manfully. And when his knyghtes saw þat þay ware gretly comforthed & be-lyfe tuke þaire wapynnez & didd als þay sawe Alexander doo, and slewe of það a grete multitude, whatt thurgh dyuerse wapynnez, what in þaire fyres. 24 And of Alexander knyghtes þe dragones slewe xx^{ti} & xxx^{ti} fotemen. After það, þare come owte of þe forsaide wodde of redez, Crabbes of a wonderfull gretteness; and þaire bakkes ware harder það cocadrillez. And when þe knyghtis smate það one 28 þe bakkes wit þaire speres, þay myzte nozte perche það, ne na harme do það. Neuer-þe-lesse þay slewe many of það in þaire Fires and þe remenant of það gatt in-to þe staunke. And aboute þe sexte houre of þe nyghte þare come apoiñ það whytt 32 lyones grettere það Bulles, and þay schoke þaire heuedeþ at það & grete manace made in þaire manere. Það þe knyghtes keped það in þaire nettis and slew þam. After this þare com apoiñ það það a grete multitude of swynne þat ware all of a 36 wonderfull mekilness, wit tuskes of a cubett lenthe. And wit það þare come wilde men & women of þe whilke ilkañ hadd sex hende. Bot Alexander & his knyghtes keped það in þaire

- nettis & slewe many of þaṅd. And on þis wyse Alexander & his
 Oste was gretly disesed. Þaṅd comanded Alexander þat þay
 schuld' make many fyres wit-owtteṅd þe Oste aboute þe stanke.
- 4 After this þare come apoṅd þaṅd a wondere grete beste, grettere
 & strangere þaṅd aṅd Olyphaunt, and he hadde in his frunte
 three lange hornes. And he was schapeṅd lyke a horse & he
 was aṅd blakke. And þis beste was called in þe langage of Inde
 8 'Anddontrucion'. And or he went to þe water at drynke, he
 assailed' þe Oste. Bot Alexander went here & þare amangez þe
 oste & comforthed' þaṅd. This ilke beste slewe of his knyghtes
 xxviiij and bare donne lij and at þe laste it fette in þe nettis and
 12 was slayne. After þis þare come oute of þe redez a grete multi-
 tude of mysz als grete als foxes, and ete up þe dede bodyes. Þare
 was na qwike thynges, þat þay bate þat ne also soṅd it dyed.
 Bot harme did' þay nane *to þe oste. Þaṅd come þare flyande
 16 amangez þaṅd bakkes, grettere þaṅd wilde dowfes, and þaire
 tethe ware lyke meṅd-tethe. And þay didd' meṅd mekill disese
 and hurte many meṅd. Of sunṅd þay bate offe þe nese; of sunṅ
 þe eres. In þe mornenyng arely þare come many fewlis als
 20 grete as wlturs, reed' of colour, and þaire fete & þaire bekis
 aṅd blakke. Bot þay didd' na disese to þe oste, bot went to
 þe stanke-syde & drewe fisches & elez oute of þe water, &
 ete þaṅd.
- 24 ¹ Þhaṅd lefte Alexander þir þerilous placez, and come wit his
 Oste, in-to þe cuntree of Bactriceṅd, þe whilke was full of
 golde & oper riches. And þe meṅd of þe cuntree resayfed hym
 benyngly & wirchipfully and gaffe hym and his Oste grete giftes.
- 28 And þare he habade xx^{ti} dayes. In þat cuntree þay sawe
 trees þat, in-stedde of leues, bare wolfe; þe whilke folkez of
 þe cuntree gaderd' & made clathe þare-offe. Þe knyghtes of
 Alexander wex wonder balde & strange of hert because of
 32 þe victoryes þay hadd' wonneṅd of þe wilde beste; before
 neuenned.
- ² Fra thethyn, Alexander remowed' his Oste and come to þe
 place whare Porus lay wit þe folke þat he hadd' assembled.
- 36 And one þe morne bathe Alexander and Porus tuke þaire
 grounde & arayed' þaire batellis for to feghte. And thaṅd

¹ Four lines with red ornate capital p,
 but small t scribbled in the margin beside.

² Four lines space with red capital S and
 small s written in the margin beside.

greater
 than bulls.
 Then
 follow huge
 swine with
 greattusks.
 And with
 them six-
 handed
 men and
 women.
 They make
 great fires
 around the
 pond. Then
 comes a
 horselike
 beast
 greater
 than an
 elephant.
 Alexander
 again

* Leaf 29.

rallies
 his men.
 It slays
 many, but
 is at last
 slain.
 Mice as
 big as foxes
 eat up the
 dead
 bodies.
 Whatso-
 ever they
 bit at once
 died.
 Then come
 bats
 greater
 than wild
 doves.
 They
 march into
 Bactria
 where they
 are well re-
 ceived.
 The wool-
 bearing
 trees.
 The
 knights
 take
 courage be-
 cause of the
 strange
 beasts they

have conquered.
The armies of Porus and Alexander are arrayed against each other.
The Indians fall heavily.
Porus challenges Alexander to single combat.
The kingship of the nations to abide by the outcome.
For Porus being a great man scorned Alexander.

* Leaf 29
bk.

Porus hits Alexander on the head.

Alexander slays Porus by a trick.
The Indians fight on for their dead king.
Alexander chides them for fighting when their leader is dead.

Alexander bespeaks them peace and surety.
They are right glad and wor-

Alexander lepped apoūn his horse Buktiphalas and went bifore his Oste & þān þay trumpede up & þe batell̄s joyned samēn, & faghte to-gedir riȝte sare. Bot þe Indienes felt̄ thikfalde in þe batell̄ as corne dose in þe felde be-fore þe sythe. 4
 1 And when̄ Porus saw that, he went and stode bi-fore all̄ his mēn, and cryed̄ vn-till̄ Alexander, & saide on this wyse: 'It sitteȝ noȝte till̄ an emperour,' quop̄ he, 'to lose his mēn þus in vayne. Bot it sitteȝ till̄ hym for to determyne his 8 cause with his awen̄d handeȝ. And þarefore late thi folke stand still̄ on þe ta syde, & mȳn on þe toþer & late the & me feghte to gedir hand̄ for hand̄. And if it happen̄ þat þou ouer-come me, my folke & I saff̄ be subiecteȝ vn-to þe. And 12 if I ouer come the, thān thou & thi folkeȝ be subiecteȝ vn-to me.' Thir wordeȝ said Porus dispysand̄ Alexander, bi-cause þat he was a mān of littill̄ stature. For he was bot three cubites hye, & Porus was fyfe cubetes hye & mare. And þare- 16 fore he traysted̄ hym all̄ in strenghe of his body, noȝte knawande þe vertu & þe hardnes þat was hidd̄ in Alexander.

*And than bathe þe osten̄ stode still̄ ant lete þe twa kynges feghte samēn, Porus gaffe Alexander a grete str[a]ke 20 oūn þe hede, & was in poynte to hafe felled̄ hym̄. And then̄ Porus knyghtes sett vp a grete Schowte. And Porus tourned̄ hym to þān̄-ward̄e for to reprove þān̄ for þaire schowtting. And Alexander went till̄ hym manfully & tuke his swerd̄ in 24 bathe his handeȝ & lete flye at hym & hitt̄ hym fullbott one þe heued̄ & slew hym. And when̄ þe Indienes saw that þay bi-gan scharply for to fighte wit̄ Alexander & his oste. Vn-to whayme Alexander spake & sayde: 'Wrechis,' quop̄ he, 28 'wharto feghte ȝe sēn̄ ȝour kynḡe es dede. Wate ȝe noȝte wele that thare na gouernour es þe folke are sparpled̄ be-lyfe als schepe þat ere wit-owtten̄ ane hirde.' Þe Indienes ansuerd̄ & saide: 'Vs es leuer,' quop̄ þay, 'fighte manfully, and dye in the 32 felde, þān̄ for to see þe dissolacion̄ of oure folke, and oure lande be destroyed̄ & wasted.' 'Leues ȝour feghtynge,' quop̄ Alexander, ' & wendeȝ hame to ȝour howseȝ pesaybly & seurely. For I swere ȝow bi oure goddeȝ, if ȝee will̄ do so, ȝe saff̄ hafe no harme, ne 36 ȝour lande saff̄ noȝte be destroyed̄ ne spoyled̄, bicause þat ȝe hafe foughen so manfully for ȝour kynḡe.' And when̄ þe Indienes

¹ Robert Louson is scribbled here in the right-hand margin.

herde thir wordes þay keste fra þaṁ þaire wapynez & thanked Alexander and wirchipeḁ him riȝte als he hadd̄ bene a godd̄. Than kyng Alexander lugeḁ hym þare & his Oste wīt hym, & he command̄ to bery þe dede corsez þat ware slayne in þe Bateff, and offred̄ sacrafice tiſt his goddez. Also he garte Entere Porus þe kyng of Inde wirchipfully.

¹Fra thethyṁ Alexander remowed his Oste & come tiſt a cuntree þat was called Oxidrares. The folkes of þat cuntree are wonder Symple meṁ, and noȝte prowde, & þay are called Gymnosophiste. Þay fehte neuer mare ne stryfes. Þay ga alway naked, & citez ne townnez hafe þay nane, Bot duellez in lugez & in caues. When þe kyng of þis folke herd̄ tell of þe commyng of Alexander he wrate a *lettre*, & sent vn-tiſt hym whare-offe this was the tenour.

^{2*} 'The corruptible Gymnosophist vn-tiſt Alexander a maṁ wee wryte. We here tell þat þou commez to werre apoṁ vs, whare of we merueylle vs gretly. For wīt vs saſt þou fynd nathing þat þou may spoyle vs offe. For we hafe na thyng elles amangez vs, bot allanly whare with we may sustene oure wafull bodys. What may þou þaṁ take fra vs. Bot if þou come for to feht wīt vs, fehte oṁ. For I late the wele witt, þat oure symplenes wiſt we on na wyse lefe.' When Alexander had redd̄ this *lettre* he sent ane ansuer agayne oṁ this wyse. 'Paisably,' quop̄ he, 'wiſt we com̄ to ȝow and no violence do ȝow.' And þaṁ he wente in-to þe cuntree whare þay duelled̄. And he saw þaṁ ga naked & duelle in luges & in caues, & þaire wyfes & þaire childre away fra þaṁ, walkand̄ wīt wilde bestez. And he hadd̄ grete marueylle, & asked̄ þaṁ if þay hadd̄ any oþer howsez. And þay ansuerde & said̄, 'Nay. Bot in thir holettez duelle we alwaye & in þir caues.' And Alexander commendid̄ gretely þaire symplenesse, and bad̄ þaṁ aske hym whate-so þay walde. And þay ansuerd̄ & sayde, 'Gyffe vs,' quop̄ þay, 'vndedlynesse, so þat we mow noȝte dye; for oþer rechis couet we nane.' Quop̄ Alexander, 'I am dedely my selfe, how þaṁ may I giffe ȝou vndedlyness?' And when þay herd̄ hym say soo þaṁ þay ansuerd̄ & sayde oṁ this wyse. 'A, A, wreched̄ maṁ,' quop̄ þay, 'whare to wendeȝ þou þus

ship Alexander as a god.

King Alexander offers sacrifice and buries Porus worshipfully. King Alexander comes to the Gymnosophists, a strange people.

* Leaf 30.

The letter of their king to Alexander, telling him he has naught to win of them.

Alexander commends them and comes peaceably to them. He sees them leading the life of nature.

He admires their ways greatly and offers them a boon. They ask for deathlessness. They chide him for his ambition when they

¹ Five lines with red capital *F* and small *f* written in the margin beside.

² Four lines with red capital *T*.

hear he
also must
die.
He says he
is driven
on to con-
quer by the
might of
God, which
will not
allow him
to rest. He
goes
thence.

He comes
to the
pillars of
Hercules,
which are
statues,
* Leaf 30
bk.
one of gold
and one of
silver.
He finds
them
hollow and
puts money
therein.
He
marches
thence into
a cold and
mirky wil-
derness.
They come
to a great
river, on the
other side
of which
are fair
women
fouly clad,
who bear
weapons of
silver since
other metal
have they
none.
There were
no men
amongst
them.

aboute, & quellez so many meñ, & soo many ilke dediz dooes
sen þou wate wele þat þou saill dye.' 'For sothe,' quoth he, 'þe
cause whi I do it es of þe prouydence of godd. For hys
mynystre I añd, doand þe commandement of hym. zee wate 4
wele þat þe see es nozte trubbled of hym selfe. Bot whenð þe
wynde entres in-till hym, þañd it stirrez hym & trublez hym.
I walde hafe risteld and lefte añt werre. Bot þare es anoþer
spyryte & suffres it nozte be in reste.' And whenð Alexander 8
hadde said thir wordez he lefte þañd & went till anoþer
cuntree.

¹ Anoþer day, he come wit his Oste till a place wharee twa
ymagez ware, þe whilke Ercules gart make & sett in þat place. 12
And þe tane of þañd was of fyne golde and þe toper of fyne
Siluere, & the leuthe of aythir of þañd was twa cubettis.
Whenð Alexander saw þir ymagez, * he gert perche² þañd for
to witt, wheþer þay ware holle or massy. And he fand 16
þat þay were a party hofte. And he garte stoppe þe hole
agayne and putt in þañd a thowsande nobles, & fyve hundreth.
And fra þeine he remowed his Oste, and entrede in-till
a wildirnesse calde & myrk, so þat þay myghte vnnethes añd 20
knaue anoþer or see anoþer. And fra thythiñ þay went seued
daye iournee and entred in-till a wildirnesse, and come till
a grete reuere. And bi-3onde þat riuere þay saw wonder faire
& wele vesaged women cledd in foule clethyng & horrible; and 24
þay hadd in þaire handez wapne made añt of siluere, bicause
þay hadd noþer Ireñ ne stele. And þay rade one horse. And
men saw þay nane amangez þañd. And whenð þe Oste walde
hafe passede ouer this ryuere, þay myzte nozte be cause it was 28
rizte brade and full of dragones and oþer monstres.

³ Fra thethin þay went aboute towardez þe lefte party of⁴
Inde and come till a dry Marras full of gret redez. And as
þay passed thurgh þat Marras, be-lyue þare come owte of þe 32
redez a beste lyke ane ypotayne, whase breste was lyke to þe
cocadriñte, and his bakke lyk a sawe, and his tethe wonder
grete, & als scharpe as a suerde; bot in his gangyng he was

perche.

³ Four lines with red capital *F* and
small *f* written in the margin beside.

⁴ MS. of twice.

¹ Three lines with red capital *A* and
small *a* in the margin beside.

² Bottom of leaf 30 right-hand side reads
as above gert perche; top of leaf 30 turn-
ing over to the left-hand side reads garte

als slaw als a snyle. And, in his oute-come, he slew twa knyghtis of Alexander. This ilke beste myzte þay on na wyse perche wit þaire speres. Bot wit mellis of yreñ þay slew it.

They come to a dry morass and meet a terrible beast.

4 ¹ And fra þeine þay trauelde thritty day iournez and come to þe vttirmaste iles of Inde, & þare þay lugeð þam̄ beside; a ryuere þat es callede in þat langage of Inde Hemmahurer. And aboute þe Eleuend̄ houre þar come owte of þe woddez a grete

They come to the uttermost isles of India.

8 multitude of Olyphantez & come apoñ þam̄ wit a gret birre & þaire groynes opyñ. And onane Alexander lepe apoñ his horse Buktiphalas and busked̄ hym agaynes þam̄ and badð þe macedoynes þat þay solde tak þaire horse and ilk a mañ a swyne in

There come a great multitude of elephants against them. But Alexander overcomes them by a trick.

12 a bande, & wende agaynes þe olyphantis. And wheñ þe oliphantis saw þam̄, þay come gapande wit þaire groynez redy te tak þam̄. And wheñ þe Macedoynes saw þat þay ware fered̄ and durste nozte go to þam̄. And Alexander saide vn-to þam,

16 'My wirchipfull knyghtes,' quop he, 'bese of gud comforth and dredez 3ow na-tynge. For, and 3e wiff gare 3oure swyne crye faste * 3e schall see all þir Olyphantis flee anoñ.' And

He bids his men take swine against

20 alsoone als þe Olyphantis herde þe crye of þe swyne, and þe noyse of þaire trompes, þay fledd̄ and durste nozte habyde. And Alexander & his meñ pursued̄ thañ, and what wit nettis, whatt wit swerdes & speres, þay slewe of þam̄ a grete multitude, and come agayne to thaire tentis.

Leaf 31.

them and makes the swine squeal.

24 ² Anoper day þay removed̄ þeine, and trauelde thurgh̄ the same woddez of ³ Inde. And þay fande þare womeñ with berdis rechande down̄ to þaire pappes, & þaire heuede; playne abownne, and þay ware cledd̄ all in skynnes. Þay chasede thir

They march thence through the forests of India and come upon wild women with long beards.

28 womeñ and sum of þam̄ þay tuke & broghte þam̄ till Alexander. And he gart spirre þam in the langage of Inde, how þay liffed in thase woddes, whare na duellyng was of meñ. And þay answered̄ & said, 'We lyffe all,' quop þay, 'wit venyson þat we

32 take in thir woddes thurgh̄ huntynge.' ⁴ Wheñ þay ware passed̄ oute of thir woddez þay come in-till a faire felde vn-till a place whare this forsaid̄ riuere ran̄. And þare þay fande bath meñ & womeñ all naked. And þay ware

And they find also other tribes of wild men

¹ Four lines with red capital *A* and small *a* beside it in margin.

² Four lines with capital *A* in red, and small *a* beside.

³ *Inde* altered into *Inde*.

⁴ Four lines with red capital *W* and small *w* written in the margin beside.

and
women.

They go
thence fif-
teen days
till they
meet the
Cynoce-
phali
whom they
overcome.

They
march
forty days
to a barren
land with
no hills,
and a
terrible
east
wind blows
over it and
causes fires
and disease
throughout
the camp.
They fear
it is be-
cause of
Alex-

* Leaf 31
bk.

ander's
ambition.
He tells
them it is
because
of the
Equinox.
Then they
go thence
twenty-five
days to a
green
valley
where is
fearful
cold. They
light fires
against the
snow-
storms.
Rain comes
and the
snow stops,
but five

als rughe of hare as þay hade bene bestes. Whase kynde & custom it was als wele to be in þe water, als oñ þe lande. And als sone als þay saw Alexander Oste onane þay fledd to þe water, and dowked in-till it. Fra þeine þay traueled xv day iournee, 4 and entred in-till woddes þat ware full of cynocephals, þe whilke als soñ als þay saw Alexander & his oste onane þay assailede þam. Bot Alexander & his men, what wit arowes whate wit speres & nettes slew a grete multitude of þam, and 8 þe remenaunt of þam fledd here and thare in þe woddeȝ.

¹ Fra thethyð þay went fourty dayes & come in-till a cham- paynne cuntree, þat was all Barayne, and na hye place ne na hilles myghte be sene on na syde. And as it ware aboute þe xj 12 houre of þe day, þare bigað so grete a wynde to blawe oute of þe Este þat it blew doune to þe eithe all thaire tentis & paire luges. And þare was grete disese ymang þe oste. For þe wynde tuk fire-brandes oute of fyres þat þay hadd made, and 16 smate dyuerse men & brynte þam. And það Alexander knyghtes mournarede gretly & said amangeȝ þam, 'þe wrethe & þe wreke of oure goddeȝ,' quop þay, 'falleȝ apoñ vs, Bicause we seke to ferre towarde þe soñ rysynge.' 'My wirchipfull 20 knyghteȝ,' quop Alexander, 'bese * of gud ccmforthe and no thyng ferde for this tempeste es noȝtee falled thurgh wrethe of oure goddes bot be-cause of equinox of heruest.' Wænd þe wynde was cessed þay gadirde to-gedir þat þe wynd hadd 24 sparpled.

² Fra þeine þay went xxv days and come in-till a grene valay, and þare þay lused þam. Than commanded Alexander þat þay schuld make many fyres. For it begað for to be vn- 28 sufferable calde. And thare be-gan for to falle grete flawghtis of snawe, as þay had bene grete lokkes of wolfe. Wænd Alex- ander saw that, he was ferde þat it schuld noȝte haf cessed sone, and bad his men þat þay suld tred douñ þe snawe & full 32 it wit paire fete. And paire fyres also helpe þam gretly. Neuer- þe-lesse þare ware fyve hundrethe of þe Oste dedd thurgh þat snawe, þe whilk Alexander gart bery. Það þare felle a pass- and grete rayne, and þe snaw cessed. Wit þe rayne, also, þare 36 come so thikke a myste, þat contenually three days to gedir þay

¹ Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* in margin beside.

² Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* in the margin beside.

saw na souid. And oute of þe clude þat hange abowid þam̄ þer
 fell as it hadd̄ bene grete fyrebrandez þe whilk brynt many of
 thaire tenttis and of þaire luges. And onane Alexander offred̄
 4 sacrifice till his goddez and bad his knyghtis put alde ryueid̄
 clathez wate bi-fore þe fire, and he made his prayere. And also
 souid the whedir wexe clere & faire.

¹ Fra thethin, þay removed̄ and come till a grete ryuere þat
 8 es called̄ Ganges & þare þay lused̄ þam̄. And as þay loked̄
 ouer on the toper syde, þay saw twa or thre meid̄ walke up &
 downid̄ þare. And Alexander badd̄ his meid̄ spirre þand̄ in þe
 langage of Inde what þey ware. And þay ansuered̄ & said̄.
 12 'We are Bragmayns,' quop̄ þay. Alexander hadd̄ grete desyre
 to speke wit̄ þe Bragmayns. Bot he myzte nozte wynnid̄ ouer
 þe water; it was so depe & so brade Bot if it had bene in þe
 monethe of July and Auguste. And also it was full of ypotaynes
 16 & scorpyones and cocadrilles, out takenid̄ in þe forsaid̄ monethes.
 And when̄ he saw þat he myghte on na wyse wynnid̄ ouer he was
 rezte heuy. And belyfe he garte make a lyttliff bate of redis, &
 couerde it wit̄ nowtte hyd̄is & gerte pykk it wele bathe wit̄-in &
 20 wit̄-owttenid̄. And when̄ þe bate was made, he gert a knyght of
 his gang in-to it, and gaffe hym a lettre wit̄ hym for to bere
 * to Dindimus, þat was kyng of þe Bragmayns, of whilk lettre þis
 was þe tenour.

24 ² 'Kyng of kynges and lorde of lordez, Alexander þe souid̄ of
 godd̄ Amoīd̄ & of þe quene Olympias, vn-to Dindimus kyng
 of Bragmayns, ioy. Euer seiid̄ we were comeid̄ to þat age þat
 we couthe discerne by-twix gud̄ & ill̄ we hafe desyred̄ soueraynly
 28 for to hafe wysdomme & kounnyng, & for to putt away fra
 vs ignorance & vnconnyng. For as þe wise techynge of oure
 philosophires declares opynly, Eloquence wit̄ owttenid̄ witt & wis-
 32 dom̄ dose ofte-sythes mare skathe þand̄ gude. Þarefore we hafe
 wele vnderstandeid̄ by relaciōid̄ of dyuerse meid̄, þat 3our lyfe &
 3our maners are diuised̄ and diuerse fra all̄ oþer meid̄; so þat
 noþer oīd̄ þe See ne on þe lande 3e seke na helpe and þat 3e
 3eme anoþer manere of doctryne þand̄ we hafe lerende of oure
 36 doctours. Whare-fore we pray 3ow þat 3e wilt̄ certyfyte vs bi
 3our lettres of 3our lyffe and 3our maners and 3our doctryne. For

hundred
 have died.
 Then
 comes a
 great mist
 with the
 rain, out of
 which fall
 firebrands.
 Alexander
 offers sacri-
 fice to
 his gods
 and the
 weather
 becomes
 clear.
 They come
 to the
 Ganges, on
 the other
 side of
 which are
 the Brah-
 mans.
 They can-
 not cross
 because of
 the danger-
 ous beasts.
 He sends a
 knight
 over in a
 boat with a

*Leaf 32.

letter to
 Dindimus,
 king of the
 Brahmans.
 Alex-
 ander's
 letter to
 Dindimus,
 asking the
 Brahmans
 the reason
 for their
 strange
 manners,
 since he
 fain would
 learn wis-
 dom of
 them.

¹ Four lines with capital *F* and small *f*
 written in the margin beside.

² Four lines with capital *K* in red,
 and small *k* in the margin beside.

Since by giving another man goodness one loses no goodness oneself. He makes a comparison.

peraventure we may take þare of sunn gud Ensamble, and þour wysdome & þour gudnesse neuer be þe lesse. For it es na harme till a mañ thurgh his gudnes to make anoþer mañ gude as he es. The whilk I may proue bi this simylitūd—I supposse a mañ hadd⁴ in his hand a lyght candill, many oþer candills may be lyghted þare at, & it lose na-thinge of his lyghte. And rizte so it es of þe gudnesse of a mañ. For many meñ may take gude ensamble of hym & his gudnesse be na thinge enmenuste þareby. Where-8 fore þitt eft-sons we pray þow þat wit-owtten⁸ any taryinge or delay, þe schowe vs þe maners of þour lyffing. Than kyng Dindimus resaffed þis lettre wirchipfully and wrate anoþer agayne of this tenour.

Dindimus' letter to Alexander.

¹ Dyndimus maister of þe Bragmayns vn-to kyng Alexander ioy & gretynge. We hafe welc vnderstanden by þe tenour of thi lettres, þat þou desyres gretly for to hafe verrey connyng and perfitt wysdom; þe whilke are mekil better þañ any 16 kyngdon; for þay may neuer be boghte wit na pryce, wharefore I comend þe gretly, knawing þat þou arte a wyse mañ. For ane Emperour wit-owtten^{*} wisdom, es noghte lorde of his subiectis, Bot his sugettis ere lordes of hym. þe wrate 20 vntill vs, praying vs for to schewe þowe oure maners of lyffynge, ilke a poynte efter oþer, þe whilke we halde impossible for to doo. For oure maner of lyffynge es full ferre dyuerse fra þours. For noþer we wirchipe þe goddes þat þe wirchipe, 24 ne ledis þe lyfe þat þe lede. And if I writte þowe oughte of oure maner of lyffing, þe may hafe na sauoure þare in, be-cause þe are besily ocupied wit dedis of armes. Neuer-þe-lesse þat þe say nozte þat I layne oure lyfe fra þow for envy, Als 28 mekil as comez to my mynde at þis tyme I sañ writt vnto þow of oure maners.

Wisdom may be bought with no price.

* Leaf 32 bk.

He commends wisdom in Alexander as an Emperour. Their ways are other than those of the Greeks. The Greeks shall have no profit because of their warlikeness.

The Brahmins lead a simple life and eschew the worship of many gods. They do not till nor fish. They trust

² We Bragmayns ledez a symple lyfe & a clene and þe wirchiping of many goddes we eschu. We do na synnes ne 32 we will hafe na mare þañ resoñ of kynde ashes. All thynges we suffer & þat, say we, es necessary & ynoghe, þat es nozte ouermekil. We till na lande, ne erylles, ne sawes, ne þokes noþer ox ne horse in plughe ne in carte. Ne nett caste we nane in þe 36 see, for to take fysche; Ne hunttynge ne fewlynge vse we

¹ Four lines with capital *D* in red, and small *d* in margin beside.

² Three lines with red capital *W*, and small *w* in margin.

nane. Mete & drynke hafe we ynoghe, and oper mete seke we
 nane, bot þat þe erthe oure allere moder wit-owttenð mannes
 labour brynges furthe. Wit swilke metis we fill oure wambes,
 4 whilke nuzes vs nozte, ne na harme dose. And zit of swilke
 metis we fill nozte oure bodis to full. For amangez vs it es an
 vn-semely thyng & an vn-leefull to see a grete-belyed mañ.
 And þare-for ere we all oure lyfe tynd wit-owttenð sekenesse
 8 & lyffez lang & alwaye are in gude hele till oure lyffes ende.
 We vse neuer-mare na medecyns ne sekens na helpe for þe hele of
 oure bodys. At a terme of deede endes oure lyfes, for ane of vs
 leues na langere þañ añ-oper, Bot efter þe order of þe birthe of
 12 mañ, þe terme of deede comes till ilke a mañ. Thare comez
 nane of vs at na fire for na calde, ne elathez comez þare nane
 apouñ vs, Bot alway we ga naked. We fulfifil neuer þe desyres
 of oure bodys. Thurgh pacyence we suffree all thynges. All
 16 oure inwarde enemys we slaa, So þat we drede nane enemys
 wit-owttenð. For lightlyer es a citee or a castelle taken þat es
 ensegged bathe wit inwarde enemys & wit-owttenð, þañ þat þat
 es ensegged allanly wit owtwarde enemys. Bot þou, emperour,
 20 feghtes agaynes owtwardez enemys for [to] foster & nuresche thynd
 inwardez enemys, þe whilke ere fendes of hefte. We Bragmayns
 has slayne all oure inwardez enemys and þarefore we drede nane
 owtwarde enemys ne nane helpe sekens for to hafe agayne þañ*
 24 noþer be see ne be land. Bot we ere always sewre ynoghe,
 and lyffez wit-owttenð any drede. Oure bodys we hif wit
 þe leues of trees and þe fruyte of þañ we ete. We ete mylke
 also and drynkes water of a gude ryuere or of swete welles.
 28 We wirchippe a godd, and till hym alwaye we zelde lonynges.
 We desire þe life of þe werlde þat es to come, and vs liste nozte
 here þe þyng þat turnez to na profett. We spekke nozte
 mekill, Bot wheñ we ere artede for to speke we say nozte bot
 32 þe sothe, and onane we halde vs still. Reches luffe we nozte.
 Couetise es a thyng þat may nozte be filled, þe whilke ofte-
 sythez brynges a mañ till a mescheuous ende. Wrethe ne
 envie es þare nane amangez vs, ne nane of vs es strangere þañ
 36 anoþer. Of the pouert þat we hafe we ere riche, for we hafe it
 in comon. We strife neuer mare, ne beres neuer wapeñ. We
 bere peesse ilkañ till oper of custonð, nozte thurgh vertu.
 Domes hafe we nane amanges vs, for we do nane ill, whare-fore

to mother
 earth.
 They use
 such meats
 as do them
 no harm,
 nor do they
 eat too
 much, and
 there are
 no great-
 bellied men
 amongst
 them. They
 have no
 sickness
 nor medi-
 cines. They
 live the
 fixed term
 of life.
 They have
 no fire for
 cold. They
 conquer
 themselves.
 Alexander
 conquers
 others and
 is con-
 quered by
 his inner
 enemies.
 Therefore
 do the
 Brahmins
 * Leaf 33.
 dread no
 foes. They
 are clad in
 leaves and
 drink
 water.
 They wor-
 ship one
 god and
 desire eter-
 nal life.
 They love
 not long
 speech nor
 covetous-
 ness.
 They are
 all of equal
 might and
 riches, and
 bear no
 weapons.
 Neither
 have they
 dooms, for
 they do no
 ill.

Neither need they mercy. They have no avarice, adultery, or lechery, and have therefore no penance or sudden death.

They are arrayed in no bright clothes.

They always keep to the same trades. They use no baths.

They will make no other man serve them.

They have no houses nor vessels, but live in caves and crags. They sleep on the earth.

* Leaf 33 bk.

Their houses become their graves.

They sail not the seas for trade.

They seek no eloquence but rather simplicity of speech. They have no philosophers, for such are liars and of unsteadfast speech.

But in their schools they learn wisdom and righteousness.

They love not plays.

we schulde be called vn-to dome. A law *pare* es þat es contrary til oure kynde. For we do na mercy, bi-cause we do no thyng whare-fore we sulde aske mercy. We do na labour þat *pertenez* to couetise or auarice. We giffe noȝte oure bodyse to lechorye, 4 we do nane adrowtrye, ne we do na synn whare-fore vs sulde nede to do penance. We fynde na fawte in na thyng, For we all does that þat righte es. We dye na sodeyne dede, For thurgh foule dedis we corrupte noȝte þe ayere. We vse na 8 clathes þat are littede of dyuerse coloures. Oure wiffes ne are noȝte gayly arayed for to plesse vs. Ne wit það we comon noȝte bi-cause of luste of lecherye, bot bi-cause of childre getyng. Our wyffes sekkes na noȝer clethyng, það þe forlute of godd 12 hase granted það. And whaa dare take apoñ hym for to chaunge his wirkyng, an heghe syn vs thynke it ware tiff any mañ for to presume to do it. Baththis vse we nane, ne warme water to wasche oure bodys wit all. Þe Soñ mynistres vs hete, 16 and þe dewe of þe ayer ministrez vs moyster & wete. We hafe na thoghte of na thyng, ne we schewe na lordechipe abownñ oȝer meñ þat ere lyke vn-tiff us. For a grete crueltee we halde it to constreyne a mañ to serue vs, whayme kynde & 20 þe forlute of godd hase made oure broȝer als fre als we are. We brynne na stanes for to make lyme off and *pare-wit* to make vs howses at dueñe in, and curiouse palasez: ne vesseñ make we nane. In caues or creuyceȝ of craggges we duelle, whare thare 24 comeȝ na noyse of wyndes * ne whare vs thare drede na rayne. On þe erthe we slepe wit-owtteñ any besynesse. Swilk howses we hafe; in þe whilke, whils we lyffe, we dueñe, and whend we dye, þay ere oure graues. We sayle noȝte in 28 þe see aboute na merchandyse, in þe whilke þay suffre many periffis þat sayles þarein & many meruaylles canñ tell offe. The crafte of Eloquence & faire speche, lere we noȝte for to polische oure wordes; Bot thurgh þe sympilnesse þat we hafe 32 þat suffres vs noȝte to lye, all oure speche we speke. Scoles of philosophres haunt wee noȝte, whase techehynges es alway discordand & na thyng certayne, ne stabill diffines, bot for þe mare partye lyes. Bot þa scoles we haunte in þe 36 whilke we lere to lyffe vertuosly and also thynges þat teches vs for to do no wrange to no mañ. Bot after verray right-wisnesse to helpe ilk mañ at oure powere. Plays lufe we nane.

Bot if vs liste hafe any disporte we take & rede; þe lyfes
 & þe dedis of oure Auncestres, and oure prædicessours. And
 if we fynde any thyng in þanð þat es cause of laughtre
 4 þar-at we wepe & makes dole. Neuer-þe-lesse we behalde
 oper thynges of þe whilke oure hertis ere gladdide and grete
 lykyng has, þat es at say, heuen-schyne wit sternes wit-owt
 nowmer; þe soñ faire & bryghte, of whase bryghtnesse all
 8 þe werlde takes lyghte and hete. The see we se alwaye
 of purpoure coloure, and when tempeste; ryse; þare-inð it dis-
 truyes nozte þe land þat es nere it, as it does in zoure
 partes. Bot he embrace; it as his sister and gase aboute it.
 12 And in þe se we see many dyuerse kynde; of Fisches,
 Delphines & porpase; layke þanð. We hafe lykyng also for
 to bihalde faire felde; alouer floresched wit flores of þe whilke
 a swete reflaire enters in-tiff oure nose; in þe whilke
 16 a sensible saule hase maste delite. Also we delit vs in faire
 place; of wodde; & of swete welles whare we here swete
 sange; of fewles. This customs hafe we al-way, þe whilke, &
 þou walde halde nozte bot a while, we trowe þou suld thynke
 20 þanð ri;te hard. Blame nozte me, for all þat þou requerede
 me be þi lettres I send þe wretynð. Neuer-þe-less, and it
 sulde nozt displese the, I walde tell þe a littill of oure
 doctryne þe whilke makes oure lyfe to seme harde vn-to þe.
 24 3ee hafe wit-in a schorte while conquered & made sugete
 vn-to 3our empire all Asy, Europe, & Affryke. As 3our selfe
 hase¹ sayde * 3e make þe lighte of þe soñ to faile, when 3e
 seke þe termes of his course thurgh werre. 3e ete all manere
 28 of thynges² þat come; tiff hande, And 3our vesages seme; as
 3e ware fastande & hungry. 3e slaa 3our childre makande
 sacrafice of þanð to Mawmetes. 3e sawe discorde bi-twix
 kynges and thase þat schulde be meke 3e stirre for to be
 32 prowde. 3e make men to thynke þat grete space of landes
 sufice; þanð nozte And so þay seke duellynge place; of heuenð.
 'Also thurgh 3our goddes 3e do many ill dedis, as þay didð
 þanð selfe, Ensample of Iubiter 3our godð & of Proserpyna þat
 36 3e wirchipe as a goddessse. For Iubiter defouled many mens

But they rather read of the lives and deeds of their forefathers and weep if there be any cause for laughter. They are glad in the brightness of nature and its delights. He will tell Alexander a little of their doctrine. Alexander has conquered the world, and made the sun pale. The visages of his men grow thin and hungry. They offer their children to Maumets. Alexander sows
 * Leaf 34. discord between kings and ever desires more ground. The gods of the Greeks do ill deeds and they are fools that serve such. The Greeks fain con-

¹ Scribblings at the bottom of leaf 33 bk. :- 'P.', 'G.' below the P., then 'H. Amen. Do For'.

² Scribe originally wrote *thynkes*, but changed the *k* into a *g*, thus *thynges*.

quer other
men

They change
their laws,
and do but
hold with
fine speech,
loving gold
and silver and
rich things.
The Greeks
live in glut-
tony and fall
sick.

The wisdom of
the Brahmins
surpasses all
that of the
Greeks.

They burn the
bodies of the
dead and do
not give back
to earth what
earth has
given forth.

The Brah-
mins slay no
beasts in the
worship of
God, neither
do they have
gold nor
silver nor
precious
things in His
service, since
for none of
these things
does God hear
man, but only
for his good
works.

Prayer is the
word and the
word is God.
Therefore are
the Greeks
fools, holding
themselves

* Leaf 34 bk.
heavenly and
thinking they
communicate
with God
whilst they
defile

wyfes, and Proserpyna made many meñ to do advowtry wit hir. Full wreched & full hye fules þay ere, þat swilke goddes wirchipes. 3ee wiñ nozte suffer meñ lyfe in þaire awenñ libertee bot makes þañ 3our thralles & 3our sugetes. 3e deme 4 nozte ryztwisly, 3e gerre 3our iugez change 3our lawes as 3ow liste. 3e say many thynges þat sulde be donne, bot 3e do þañ nozte. 3e halde na mañ wysse bot hym þat hase Eloquence of speche. 3e hafe añ 3our witt in 3our tungez, and añ 3our 8 wysdome es in 3our mouthe. 3e lufe golde & siluer & gaders þam to-gedir and desyre 3 to hafe grete howsez & hye, and grete multitude of seruandez. 3e ete & drynk to mekiñ, so þat oftymes 3our stomake thurgh grete repleccioñ es greued & many 12 sekenesse þare-thurgh 3e fañ in, & so ofte sythes dyes before 3our tyme. 3e wolde euer-mare halde 3our reches and añ thynges þat 3e may gete. Bot añ thynges at þe laste leues 3ow. Þe wysdoñ allanly of þe Bragmayns passez añ 3our witt & 16 3our wysdoñ. For, & we wele consedere, þe same moder þat broghte forthe stanes & trees, of þe same was bathe oure bygynnyng & 3ours. 3e honowre 3our Sepultours curyously wit golde & syluer, and in vesselle made of precyouse stanes 3e putt 20 þe asse of 3our bodyes, when þay ere brynned. And what may be werre þañ for tiñ take þe banes, þat þe erthe sulde hafe, for to ga bryñ þañ, and nozte suffere þe erthe resayffe his element þe whilke he broghte forthe. 24

‘We sla na bestez in þe wirchipe of goddez. Nee temples make we nane, for to sett in ymagez of golde or of siluere in þe name of false goddez, as 3e do; ne awters of golde and of precious stanes. 3e hafe swilke a lawe for to honoure 3our 28 goddez wit 3our gudes for þat þay sañ here 3our prayers. Bot we vñdirstande & wate wele þat noþer for golde ne siluer; ne for þe blode of calues nor gayte ne schepe Godd heres any mañ. Bot for gude werkes þe whilke Godd lufes, and thurgh 32 þe wordes of deuote prayere. Godd wiñ here a mañ for þe worde. For thurgh worde we ere lyke to Godd. For Godd es worde,* and þat worde made añ þe werlde aud thurgh þat worde añ thynges hase beyng, Mouyng & lyfe. That worde wirchipe 36 wee and luffes & honowres. Godd es a spirite. And he lufes na-thing bot þat that es clene. Whare-fore we halde 3ow full grete foles, that wenez 3our kynde be heuenly, and þat 3e hafe

- communicaciō with Godd, And neuer-pe-less files *your* kynde wit advowtries & fornicacions & seruyce of Mawmettis & false goddis, and many oþer wikkede dedis: ilke a day þis 3e do.
- 4 Þis 3e luffe, and þarefore when 3e ere dede ye sañ suffere tourmentis wit-owtten nowmer. 3e wene þat Godd will be mercyable vn-to 3ow bi-cause þat 3e offre hym blode & flesse of dyuerse bestez. Bot we on þe contrarye wyse luffez clenness bathē of
- 8 Body & of saule, so þat we mowe hafe after þis lyfe ioy þat neuer sañ hafe ende.
- ‘ 3ee serue nozte a Godd þat regnez in heueñ, Bot 3e do seruyce to many false goddis. For als so many membrs, als 3e hafe oñ
- 12 *your* bodys, als many goddis 3e wirchipe & serues. For 3e caste a mañ þe lesse werlde, and rizte as a mañ here hafe many lymmes, so 3e say þare are many goddes in heueñ. 3e say Iuno es godd of þe hert, bi-cause he was wonder angry; and Mars 3e
- 16 say es godd of þe breste, bi-cause he was pryñce of Batellis. Mercury 3e caste godd of þe tung, bi-cause he was wonder euloquent in spekyng. Hercules 3e trowe be godd of þe armes, Bi-cause he did twelfe passande dedes of armes. 3ee trowe
- 20 Bacus be godd of þe throtte, for he fande firste drounkynnesse. Couetise, 3e say, es godd of þe lyuer, for he was þe firste lechoure pat euer was. And 3e say þat he hafe in his hande a byrñand fyrebrande whare-wit he styrres þe luste of lechery. Cereris
- 24 3e caste godd of þe wambe, bi-cause scho was þe firste Fynder of wheete. And Venus, be-cause scho was moder of lechery, 3e say scho es godd of þe preuee membres of mañ & womañ. Mynerua, bi-cause scho was fynder of many werkes, 3e say
- 28 wisdomē riste; in her, and þare-fore 3e cast hir godd of þe heueñ. And oñ þis wyse all þe body of mañ 3e deuyde in goddes, & na party þareoffe 3e lefe in *your* aweñd powere. Ne 3e trowe nozte that a godd þat es in heueñ made *your* bodys of noghte.
- 32 False goddes 3e wirchipe þat sañ bryñge 3ow to thralledome & schame & schenchipe, and to thayñd 3e make sacrafice & tribute payes. Vn-to Mars 3e offere a Bare. To Bacus 3e offere a gayte; To Iune a pacoke; To Iubiter a Bulle; To
- 36 Appollo * a swane¹; To Venus a doufe; To Mynerua ane owle; To Cereris floure; To Mercury hony. And Hercules 3e onowreñ wit floures & grene braunches of treessez. Þe temple

their own kind with foul sins and idolatry. When they die they shall suffer endless pain and their slain beasts avall them nought.

The Greeks serve not one God but many. They have for every human member a god.

The account of all the Greek gods and their evil doings.

Thus they give all their body over to numberless gods, not worshipping the one Creator, but rather false gods that bring them into * Leaf 35. thraldom. The sacrifices

¹ Bottom of leaf 34 swanne, top of leaf 35 swane.

which they offer to their gods. The gods become not their helpers but their tormentors, egging them on to all evils. Yet they must hearken to them.

Righteous punishment for the ill deeds of the Greeks.

The prayers of the Greeks are evil, so that they are harmed whether such be heard or not.

All the torments of hell are in the Greeks through their own vices.

And the bodies of the Greeks are a living hell.

of Couetyse 3e enourne wit rose3. Añe 3our myghte & 3oure triste 3e putt in þam þat may 3ow na-þyng helpe at nede. Now sothely 3e pray þaṁd no3te to be 3our helpers, Bot 3oure *tourmentours*. For it byhoues nedis be þat, als many 4 goddes als 3e wircþipe & gyffe3 þaṁd powere of 3our lymmes, als many *tourmente3* 3e suffere. Ane of 3our goddes stirres 3ow to fornycacion. Ane oþer to ete & drynke to mekiñ, and anoþer to feghte & stryffe. Añ ere þay 3our lordes, and to 8 þaṁd 3e obey & serues and wircþippes. So þat wonder it es þat 3our wrechid^r bodys fayles no3te for þe many seruyce3 þat 3e do to so many goddes. And gud ri3te it es þat 3e serue swilke goddes bi-cause of þe many wikkede dedis þat 3e do. 12 And for 3e wilt no3te cesse of 3our iñ dedis, þarefore 3e serue swilke goddes tiñt 3our awenñd harme, For euermare þay desyre þat 3e do iñ. If 3our goddes here 3ow when 3e pray to þam, þay do 3ow harme in 3our conscience. For þat that 3e pray 16 fore es iñ. And if þay here 3ow noghte, þaṁd ere þay contrarye to 3our desyres. Whare-fore whethir þay here 3ow, or þay here 3ow noghte, euer-mare þay do 3ow disesse. Þise ere þa¹ *tourmente3* þat oure doctours talde vs offe, þat here in this 20 werlde *tourmente3* 3ow as 3e ware dede. For, and 3e consyder wele, þare may no man suffere wers *tourment* þaṁd 3e doo. For añ þe takens þat oure doctours telle3 vs ere in helle, and we see þaṁd in 3owe.² Þare are many paynes in helle, 24 3e suffre paynes when 3e wake for to do advowtres, fornycacions, & thiftes, mañ-slawghters. And namely, þat 3e bee filled^r of werldly reches; 3a, & of worldly rechesse. For oure doctours says, þare es in helle so mekiñ thriste, þat it may 28 neuer be slokend^r; and 3e haue so grete Couetyse of worldely reches þat 3e may neuer be full. Þay say also þat in helle þare es a hunde þat es callede *Cerberus* þe whilke hase thre heuedes; And if 3ee conseder ry3te, 3our wambes are lyke *Cerberus*. 32 For mekiñ etyng & drynkkyng, þay say also, þare es³ in helle a maner of nedder þat es called^r *Idra*. And 3e for þe many vice3, þat 3e hafe bicause of 3our full wambe3 may be callede *Idra*. Whare-fore & we bi-helde wele añ þe illes þat 36

¹ MS. reads *þa*.

² in *3owe* inserted in the right-hand margin by the same scribe.

³ MS. twice over, *þare es*.

are in helle, þay dueſſe in 3ow. * Waa es 3ow, wreches, þat swilke a mysbileue haldes; whare-fore after þis lyfe, 3e moñd suffere paynes wit-owtteñd nowmer.' Wheñd Alexander hadd' redd' þis
 4 *lettre*, he was wonder wrathe, be-cause of iniury of his godde3. Neuer-þe-less, be-lyfe he gart write anoþer agayne of this tenour.

1 'Kyng of kynges, and lorde of lorde3, Alexander þe soñd of
 8 godd' Amoñd and of þe quene Olympias, to Dindimus, kyng of þe Bragmayns, gretyng. If all be fuñd trew amanges 3ow þat þou hase sent wretyñd in thy *lettres*, þañd allanly 3e are gude meñd in þis werlde; for as þou says 3e do nañd ill.
 12 Bot wit þou wele² for certayne, þat þis maner of lyffying *comme3* no3te of vertu bot of customð. All thynges þat we do, 3e saye es synñd. And all þe crafte3, þat ere amange3 vs on þe same wyse, 3e say, þay ere synnes. 3e wiñt distroye all þe
 16 customs þat mañd-kynde hedir-towarde hase hadd' & vsed. Owther 3e schew bi 3our worde3, þat 3e are godde3, or ellis till goddes 3e hafe envy. And þare-fore 3e say, as 3e say, I may no3t write to 3ow all þe order of 3our lyffying. Bot als mekiñ þare-offe
 20 als I may vnderstande at this tyme, I sañt writte vn-to 3ow. 3ee say 3e vse no3te for to till þe erthe, ne sawe na corne, ne plante na vynes, ne sett na trees, na to make na faire howsez. And þe cause here-of as it wele semes es for 3e hafe na Ireñd,
 24 whare-of 3e myghte make 3ow tuyles for to wirke with-alle. And þare-fore 3ow by-houes nedes ett herbes & lede an harde lyfe, ry3te as beste3. For 3e may nowþer gette brede ne flesche ne fysche. Does no3t wolves oñd þe same wyse, þe whilke, wheñd
 28 þay may no3te gete þaire fiñt of flesche, þay fiñt þaire belys of þe erthe? And it ware lesful or lykande to 3ow to come till oure cuntree, we sulde lere na wisdomð of 3oure nede. And þare-fore late 3our hunger habyde at hame in 3our awenñd cuntree.
 32 þat mañd es no3te mekills at commend' þat alwayes lyffes in disesse. Bot he es gretly to commend', þat in rechis lyffe3 attemperally. Bot and meñd schulde be commendid' þat are oppressed' wit disesse, þañd sulde blynd meñd, leprouse meñd,
 36 & oþer swilke ouer all oþer be commendid'; þe blynde, for he sees no3t at desyre; þe pouer, for he hase no3te at do. And we walde make oure duellynge in 3our cuntree we sulde suffere

* Leaf 35 bk. Woe to the Greeks. Alexander is angry at this letter, and replies to Dindimus.

If it be as Dindimus says, then truly the Brahmins only are good. Yet the Brahmins do this through custom, eschewing all civilization, and envy of the gods.

Their sparingness and virtues come from their poverty and the poorness of their country.

They are even as wolves.

If they come to Greece the Greeks should learn naught of them, so let them abide at home.

Poverty is not to be praised, but temperance in riches, nor are the maimed to be praised that they

¹ Five lines spaced red capital *K* with small *k* in the margin beside.

² Bot wit þou wele repeated in MS.

do no ill,
since their
defect

* Leaf 36.

hinders
them.
Their chas-
tity is due
to want of
food.
But the
Brahmins
live as mere
beasts.

The Brah-
mins seek
no learn-
ing, having
beastlike
no feeling
or delight
in good.
But men
can rejoice
through
free will.
The
changes of
the world
and of the
ages of
man are
even as the
day
brightens
and
darkens,
even as a
child is
simple,
youth pre-
sumptuous,
and old age
stable.
Who will
look for the
opposite?
The de-
lights of the
senses and
of those
things
given us by
earth, sea,
and sky.
Abstinence
from this is

pouert & wrechidnes riȝte as ȝe do. ȝe say also þat ȝour wyfes
vseȝ na prowde aray for to plese þaire husbandeȝ, and þe cause
es for þay hafe na noȝer * thyng for till araye þam̄ wit.¹ Also ȝe
say ȝe do nane advowtries ne fornycaciōns. And þat es na 4
meruaile! For-whi, how sulde þay hafe luste to lechery þat
etes noȝte. Luste of lechery es noȝte comonly, bot yf it come
of hete of þe leuer or ellis of habundance of mete & drynke.
Bot ȝe ete na-thinge bot herbes & roteȝ, as ȝe ware swyne, 8
& drynkes water & vnnethes may ȝe slokeñ ȝour hunger and
þarefore ȝe hafe nañ appitite to womēñ.

‘ȝe hafe na liste to studie aboute lerynge, ne ȝe seke na
mercy ne dees nane till oper. And all this ȝe hafe in comōñ 12
wit besteȝ. For riȝte as besteȝ hase nowȝer resoñ ne discreciōñ,
ne hase na felynge of gude, riȝte so þay hafe na delite in gode.
Bot till vs resonable meñ þat has free wilf of kynde ere many
lykynges & blandeschyngeȝ granted. For it es im-possible þat 16
þis werlde wyde & brade sulde noȝte hafe suñ chaungynge of
gouernance; So þat ne after heuyness & sorowe, Ioy & myrthe
sulde noȝte folowe.² For-why manes wilf es variable & change-
able þat chaungeȝ wit þe heueñ abownd. On þe same wyse 20
manes hert es dyuerse. For wheñ þe day es clere, manes hert
es gladde & blythe. And wheñ þe day es derke, manes wittis
are derke & dullē & heuy. Also meñ chaungeȝ thurgh dyuerse
ages. For barnehed reioyse it in sympilnesse, ȝouthede in 24
presumptuosnes, And grete elde in stabilnes. For wha wilf
luke efter wysdome in a childe, In a ȝunge mañ stabilfnes, or
in an alde mañ wildenes? Many delitable thynges comeȝ till
oure mynde. For suñ we See wit oure eghne; Suñ we hafe 28
thurgh herynge; Suñ we fele thurgh smellyng; Suñ thurgh
tastyng; and Suñ thurgh towchynge. Sumtyme we hafe
delite in salutaciōns & swete sangeȝ & melodys of dyuerse
Instrumenteȝ. Of þe erthe we hafe al maner of gud fruyteȝ; 32
of þe see we hafe habundance of fysche, and of þe ayere delyte
of fewles of dyuerse kyndis. If þou abstene þe fra all thies
owthir it es for pride or for envy. For pride, þat þou dispyseȝ
swilke precyouse gifteȝ. For envy bi-cause þay ere noȝte gyffēñ 36
ȝow, as þat þay ere to vs. Bot efter myñ opnyñōñ I deme þat

¹ Leaf 35 þam wit; leaf 36 þam wit.

² The second vowel in *folowe* is difficult to read. It looks like *folewe*.

3our lyffing and 3our maners commes mare of foundnesse þaīd of wysdōn. For seīd 3e are meīd 3e schulde hafe þe vertu3 of a resonable creature, and þat hafe 3e no3hte.' When Dindimus 4 hadd' redd' þis *lettre*, ouane he wrate anoþer to kyng Alexander of þis tenour.

1 'Dyndimus, þe mayster of þe Bragmayns, vn-tiff Alexander, gretynge. We hafe vnderstand þe tenour of þi *lettres* & þus we 8 ansuere. We er no3te * lordez of this werlde, as we sulde euermare lyffe þare in. But we ere pilgrymes in þis werlde, and wheīd dede comme3 we wende tiff oþer habytacions. Oure Synnez greuez vs no3te, ne we duelle no3te in þe tabernacles of 12 synners.² We do na thyfte. And for þe conscyence þat we hafe, we gaa no3te furthe in opeīd. We say no3te þat we ere goddes, ne nane envy hase vn-to þaīd. Godd' þat made all þat es in þis werlde, he ordeyned many diuerse thynges. For 16 warne dyuersitees ware of thynges þe werld myzte noghte stande. Godd' gaffe maīd fre will, for to discerne of all thynges þat ere in þe werld, and chese whilke hym lyste. Wharefore he þat leues þe īfī & chese3 þe gude, no3te godd', but goddes 20 frende he may be called. Be-cause þat we lyffe contentently, and in quiete & reste, 3e say þat we ere goddez, or elles þat we hafe envy to goddez. But this suspecciōn þat 3e hafe of vs, pertenez to 3ow. For 3e þat ere blawēd full of 24 þe wynde of pride 3e aray 3our bodys wit glorious clethyng, and on 3our fyngers, 3e putt iowells of golde & precyous stanes.

'Bot I pray 3ow, what profit does þis 3ow: Golde and siluer 28 saues no3te a manes saule, ne sustenez no3te mens bodys. Bot we þat knawes þe verray profit of golde, and þe kynd' þare-offe, when vs thristez, & gase to þe ryuere for to take vs a drynke, if we fynde golde in þe way, we trede apoīd it wit oure 32 fete. For golde noþer fille3 vs wheīd we hunger, ne slokens oure thriste, ne it hele3 no3te a maīd þat es seke. If a maīd thriste & drynke water, it puttez away his thriste. Also if a maīd hunger & ete mete, it does away his hunger. Bot and 36 golde ware of þe same kynde, als soīd als a maīd hadd' it, þe vice of Couetyse suld be slokynde in hym. Be þis cause es golde īfī.

due either to pride or peevishness. He deems the Brahmyns live so through folly.

Dindimus to Alexander.

* Leaf 36 bk.

Man is not lord of this world, but a pilgrim in it. The virtue of the Brahmyns.

God made things diuerse so that the world might endure.

He gave man free will to choose of all that which him list. Not they, but the Greeks, seem envious of the gods.

Gold and silver save none. They despise it as useless, quenching neither hunger nor thirst.

Neither does it slack the vice of covetousness.

¹ Two lines with small red capital *D* and small cursive *d* in the margin beside.

² MS. *synners* with a contraction mark over the *y*.

The more one has the more one desires. The Greeks worship wicked men, being themselves wicked, offering up beasts to their idols. Thus do they, who shall die, honour themselves.

* Leaf 37. Alexander to Dindimus. The Brahmins live as they do because they do not mingle with other men, but are shut off from them. They suffer even as those who lie in prison. He holds them as wretched fools, and could he but do it would march towards them with an army to make them leave their miserable life and become warriors.

For ay þe mare þat a mañ hase þare-offe, þe mare he couetes. Wikkede meñ are wyrchippede amangeȝ ȝow. For comonly a mañ luffes hym þat es lyke tiſt hym ſelfeñ. ȝe ſay þat goddʹ takes nane hede tiſt dedly thynges. And neuer-þe-lesse ȝe bygge 4 temples, and makes autres in þañd, and settis vp mawmettes abownñ þañd, and grete delyte hase whenñ bestes ere offerde, & in þam, and at ȝour name es noysede, þis was done to þi fader, to thyñ Eldfader, & tiſt aſt thi progenytours. And þe 8 same also es highte on-to þe. Wit swilke wirchipes þay ere rewarded, þat knawes noȝte þañd ſelfe dedly.ʹ When Alexander haddʹ reddʹ þis lettre onane he ſente anoþer agayne and that was of this tenour þe whilk þat folowes.¹

¹² 2 * Alexander, þe soñd of goddʹ Amoñ & of þe quene Olympias, kyng of kynges & lorde of lordeȝ, vn-to Dyndymus kyng of þe Bragmayns we ſende. For als mekiſt als ȝour duellynge es in þat partye of þe werlde fra þe begynnyng, where na strangers 16 may comñ to ȝow, bot if it be riȝte fewe, ne ȝe may noȝte passe forthe of ȝour cuntree, but als swa ſay ȝe, are parredʹ in, and na ferrere may passe; þarefore ȝe magnyfy ȝour manere of lyffynge and supposeȝ þat ȝe are blyſſedʹ be-cause þat ȝe er so speredʹ in, 20 þat if ȝe walde neuer so gladly passe furthe for to lere þe customes þat oþer meñ vseȝ, ȝe may noȝte; and nyſt-ȝe wiſt-ȝe, ȝow by-houes nedis ſuffere þat cayteſtee þat ȝe lyffe in. Wherefore it ſemeȝ bi ȝour techyng, that þay þat ligges in preſonñ, 24 are als mekiſt at comendʹ als ȝe, þe whilke vn-to paire lyues ende ſuffres ſorowe and nede. And as me thynke, þe gudnesse þat ȝe ruſe ȝow offe, may wele be lykkenedʹ to þe paynes of paim þat ere in preſonñ. And so þat that oure lawe demes to be done t[i]ll wikkedʹ 28 meñ, ȝe ſuffere kyndely. And þare-fore hym þat we halde wyſe, ȝe halde an Ebbere fule³. Sothely me thynk ȝour lyffynge es noȝte blyſſedʹ bot wrechidʹ and as it ware a chaſtyng to ȝowe. I ſwere ȝow by oure goddeȝ of myghte, þat, & I myghte come 32 to ȝow with an oſte, I ſulde gare ȝow leue ȝour wrechidʹ lyfe, and by-come meñ of armes, als many of ȝow als ware able.ʹ When Alexander hadʹ ſent this lettre tiſt Dyndimus he gart

¹ The second vowel of *folowes* is often written so small as to render it uncertain whether it is an *o* or *e*.

² Four lines with red capital *A*.

³ *ſou* written in MS. before *fule* and scratched out. This word *ſou* or *fou* was complete and not a half-written word, as the MS. shows.

- rayse vp a pelare of Marble a wonder grete, & an heghe, and gart writt *pare*-upon this title wit letters of grewe, of latyne, and of þe langage of Inde. 'I Alexander, Philip̄ son of Macedoyne, after þe discomfytow & þe dedd of Darius & Porsus come on werre vn-to this place.'
- ¹ Fra þeine kyng Alexander & his Oste removed & come intiff a felde, þat was called Actea & þare þay lugeð. Abowte 8 þat felde was a thikke wodd̄ of treesse berand̄ fruyte; of þe whilke wilde meñ þat duelt in þe Same wodd̄ vsede for tiff hafe þaire fude, whase bodyes ware grete as geauntez, and þaire clethyng ware made of skynnes of dyuerse beste. And wheñ 12 þay saw Alexander Oste luge þare, onane þare come oute of þe wodd̄; a grete multitude of þam̄ wit lange roddes in þaire handz & bi-gañ for to feghte wit þe oste. And þan Alexander commanded̄ þat all [þe] oste schulde sette vp a schowte at aues. And also 16 sone als þe wylde* meñ herde þat² noyse, þay were wouderere fered̄ be-cause þay had neuer be-fore herde swilke a noyse. And thañ þay be-gañ to flee hedir & thedir in þe wodd̄. And Alexander & his meñ persued̄ þam̄ and slewe of þam̄ vi^c xxx iiij. And þay slew 20 of Alexander knyghtes xxvij. In þat felde Alexander & his oste leugeð iij dayes and vetailed̄ þam of þat fruyte þat growed in þe wodd̄.
- ³ Fra þeine þay removed and come tiff a grete ryuer, & lugeð 24 þam þare. And as it ware abowte none, þare come apoñ þam a wilde mañ, als mekiñ als a geaunte. And he was rughe of hare all ouer, and his hede was lyke tiff a swyne, And his voyce also. And wheñ Alexander saw hym, he bad his knyghtis tak 28 hym̄ & bryng hym bi-for hym̄. And wheñ þay come abowte hym, he was na thyng fered, ne fledd̄ nozte, bot stodd̄ baldly bi-fore þam̄. And when Alexander saw that, he comanded̄ þat þay sulde take a zounge dameseñ & nakkeñ hir & sett hir bi-fore hym. 32 And þay did̄ soo. And onane, he ranne apoñ hir romyand̄ as he hadd̄ bene wodd̄. Bot þe knyghtes wit grete deficultee reffe hyr fra hym. And ay he romyed̄ & made grete mane. And este þay broghte hym tiff Alexander and sett hym bi-fore hym. 36 And Alexander wonderd̄ gretly of his figure. And þam̄ he

Alexander raised up a pillar and wrote his victories on it in Greek, Latin, and in the language of India. They come to a forest full of wild men eating fruit and clothed in the skins of beasts. They fight Alexander with rods in their hands.

* Leaf 37 bk.

The Greeks put them to flight by shouting, and slay many of them.

They come to a great river and stay there. There they meet a wondrous wild man with a swine's head and voice.

They tempt him with a naked damsel and

¹ Four lines with red capital F.

² þat at the bottom of leaf 37 and þe at the top of leaf 37 bk.

³ Five lines with large red F, small f beside.

then burn him alive. They come to a wondrous wood-land with trees that spring up in the day-time and at sunset sink back into the earth, with fruit of sweet smell but of bitter taste.

A knight takes of this, but is smitten dead by an evil spirit, and a voice proclaims the same to any that come nigh. In that

* Leaf 38.

place are tame birds, and who touches them is scorched by fire. They come to a mountain, climb for 8 days, and at the top they fight dragons, etc. Going down they come into a dark valley with wondrous trees and streams, and a mountain with thick air.

gerte bynd hym till a tree & make a fyre abowte hym & brynne hym. And so þay didd. ¹ Fra þeine þay removed & come till anoþer felde in þe whilke þare ware growand tresse, of a wonderfull heghte, and þay bigan for to sprynge vp at þe soñ rysynge ; 4 And bi þe soñ settinge þay wyted a-way in-to þe erthe agayne. At þe firste houre of þe day þay bi-gan to sprynge oute of þe erthe, & so þay wex ay to myddaye, and þan þay bi-gan to decrese. And by þe soñ settinge þay ware in þe erthe agayne, 8 And was na thyng of þam sene bi-fore oñ þe morne. Þir tresse bare a fruyte wonder swete of reffayre bot þay [ware] bitter of taste. When Alexander saw þat fruyte he bade a knyghte bryng hym þareoffe. And he went & tuk þare-offe, and onane 12 a wikked spirit smate hym, and be-lyfe he was dede. And þan þay herd a voyce in þe ayer þat said on þis wyse: 'What mañ so neghes þir tresse he sall dye onane.' Þare was also in þat felde fewles wonder meke & tame. Bot what mañ so layde 16 hande on any of þam, onane þare come fire oute of þam, & brynt hym rihte greuosly.

* ² Than þay removed fra þeine, And come till a Mountayne, þat was so hye, þat þay ware viij dayes in gangyng ar þay 20 myzte wyne to þe heghte þare-offe. And wheñ þay come to þe heghte of it, þare come agaynes þam a grete multitude of dragones, Serpentes, and lyones þe whilke turmentid Alexander & his meñ rechte gretely. And at þe laste, þay askaped þaire 24 daungere, and went doune of þe mountayne and come in-till a vaylay þat was so myrke þat vnnethes myghte ane of þam See anoþer. In þat depe valay ware tresse growand of whilke þe fruyte & þe lefes ware wonder sauory in þe tastynge, and reueñs 28 of water faire & clere. Aghite dayes contennely þay saw na soñ. And at þe viij days end þay come to þe fote of a mountayne whare all þe Oste thurgh a wikked thikk ayer ware so gretley disessed þat þay ware in poynte to hafe bene choked 32 þare-offe. And wheñ þay come a-bowñ on þe mountayne, þay fande þe ayer mare sotell, and þe lighte of þe day mare clere. And þus þay ware wendand vpwarde, oñ þis Mountayne Elleuñ, xj, days wit grete trauaile. And wheñ þay come to þe 36

¹ Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* beside.

² Four lines with red capital *T* and

a dragon within, and the head of a dragon above with sting out.

hegheste of þis Mountayne, þay saw on þe toper syde faire weder & bryghte. And þaṅ þay went down of þis Mountayne, and come in tilf a grete playne of whilke þe erthe was wonder rede.

4 And in þis playne þare ware growande treesse wit-owtten nowmer; and þay passed nozte a cubit in heghte, & þaire fruyte & þaire lefes ware passandly swete as þay had bene fyges. And þay fande þare reueffs rizte many, of clere water as cristaffe.

8 And it was als nureschand to manes body, as it hadd bene mylke wit-outen eny oþer mete. Thurgh þat ilk playne þay went fourty .xl. days and þaṅ þay com tilf wonder heghe Mountaynes; and it semed as þe toppes had towched þe firma-

12 ment. And þir Mountaynes ware als brant vp-rizte as þay had bene walles. So þat þare was na clymbyng vpon þam. And at þe laste þay fande twa passagez be-twix þase Mountaynes, of whilke, þe tane streched to-warde þe west, and þe toper towarde

16 þe Este. Than Alexander demed þat that dyuysoṅ be-twix þase Mountaynes was made thurgh Noye flode. And þaṅ þay went by þat passage þat streched to warde þe Este Seueṅ days. And on þe heghten .viij. day þay fande a Basilisc þat men

20 callez a Cocatrys, a grete & ane horrible. And bicause of his grete elde he was fouff stynkand. * Þis ilke Basilisc was so venymous, þat nozte aft anely thurgh his stynke, bot also thurgh his sighte allane, whayṅ so he loked on, he sulde dy

24 onane; þaṅ þe Macedoynes and þe persyenes, as þay passede thurgh þe strayt way dyed thikk-falde thurgh þe sighte of þat¹ Basilisc. And when Alexander knyghtis saw that perill, þay durste passe na forther bot said amangez þaṅ: 'þe vertue of

28 oure goddes,' quoth þay, 'es bifore vs, þat schewes vs þat we schulde ga na forthir.' Bot Alexander went bi hym ane vpon an heghe cragge, where he myghte see on ferrome fra hym. And þaṅ he saw this pestellencius beste þe Basilisc lygg

32 slepande in myddes of þe passage. þe kynde of hym was þat, als so sone als he felid a maṅ or a beste com nere hym, for to open his eghne & stare appon þaṅ, and als many als he loked on, solde sudaynly falle douṅ & dye. When

36 Alexander had sene hym, Be lyfe he went doune of þe² cragge, and gart sett a merke þat na maṅ sulde passe. And

They climb this mountain for eleven days and then they come through clear weather into a land of red earth growing dwarf trees with wonderfully sweet fruit. And here they find crystal streams whose waters nourish as though they were milk. They march through that plain forty days, and then they come to mountains whose tops reach the skies and in which were two passages, one towards the west and the other towards

* Leaf 38 bk. the east, which Alexander thinks were made by the Flood. They go east seven days. On the eighth day they find a Basilisk that slays through look alone. He kills many. Alexander surveys him from afar off.

¹ þat inserted above the line by scribe.

² g first turned into c, then finally erased between þe and cragge.

Alexander approaches him shielded by a mirror, so that the Basilisk slays himself with his own glances.

The Basilisk being slain they burn him, and praise Alexander.

At last they found their way barred, and must come back to the plain. Then they went westward fifteen days and then to the left. They come to a mountain of adamant hung

* Leaf 39.

around with chains of gold and with sapphire steps.

Alexander goes up the mountain with twelve princes, and finds a wondrous palace of precious

það he gart a pavysse be made seuēd cubites of lenghte & foure oñ brede; and oñ þe vtter syde þare-offe he gart sett a grete Mirroure, And a large. And at þe nethir ende of þe pavisse he gart nayle a burde þe lenthe of a cubit for to couere 4 wit his legges, and his fete, so þat na party of hym myzte be sene. And þan Alexander tuk þis pavisse in his handis, and went towarde this Basilisc, and warned his meñ þat nañ of þam sulde passe his termes. And when he come nere þe 8 basilisc, þe basilisc opynde his eghne. And wit a grete ire he bi-helde þe Mirroure and saw hym-selfe þare-in. And of þe reflexcion of þe bemes of his sighte strykande appoñ hym-selfe Sudarly he was dede. And when Alexander knewe wele þat 12 he was dede, he called till his knyghtis; And bad þam come see hym þat slewe þaire felawes. And when þay come till hym, þay saw þe Basilisc dede. And það þay comended & prayssed gretly his hardynesse and his hye witt, And went & 16 bryneþe þe Basilisc at þe commandement of Alexander.

¹ Fra þeine þay went till þey come to þe ferreste of þat waye; and ferrere myzte þay nozte wynð. For þare ware so hye Mountaynes agaynes þam and craggēs like walles þat þay 20 myzte passe no forþer. And það þay turned agayne, and come to þe forsaide playne; and went by þat way þat streched towarde þe weste fyvftene .xv. days. And það þay lefte þat way, And turnede oñ þe lefte hande. And so þay went foure score 24 iiij days, and at þe laste þay come till a Mountayne of adamande; and at þe fute þare-offe þare hange chynes of golde. Þis Mountayne hadd made * of saphyres twa thowsande 28 gree; & a halfe, by þe wilke meñ ascendid to þe summit of þe Mountayne. And þare Alexander & his Oste lugged þam.

² And on þe morne Alexander Offerd sacrafice till his goddes, And það he tuk with hym xij twelue pryncez of þe wyrchip- 32 fulleste þat he hade, and went vp bi þe forsaide gree; till he come abouñ oñ þe Mountayne. And þare he fandē a palace wonder faire and curiously wroghte; and it hade twelve gates and thre score & teñ wyndows. And þe lyntaïs bathe of þe 36 durs and of þe wyndows ware of fyñ golde, wele burnescht, and þat Palace was called þe howse of þe soñ. Þare was also

¹ Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* beside.

² Four lines with red capital *A*.

a temple all of golde & of precious stanes, And bi-fore þe
dores þare-offe þare was a vyne of golde, berande grapes of
charbuncles, of Rubyes, Dyamandez, and many oþer maneres of
4 *precyous* stanes. Ðað kyng Alexander & his princez went in-to
þe palace; and fande þare a mañ liggand in a bedd of golde, and
couerd wit a riche clathe of golde. And he was rizte a mekill
mañ and a faire, And his berde & his heued ware als whitt
8 als any wolle; and hym semed lyke a Bischoppe. Als soñ als
Alexander & his prynces saw þis alde mañ þay knelid dounne
on þaire kneesse and saluste hym. And he ansuerd & saide:
‘Welcomð Alexander,’ quop he, ‘I telle the þou sañ see, þat neuer
12 flescly mañ bi-fore this tyme sawe; And þou sañ here þat neuer
erthly mañ herde are.’ And Alexander ansuerd & sayd: ‘Maste
blyssed alde mañ,’ quoth he, ‘how hase þou knawying of me?’
‘For sothe,’ quoth he, ‘bi-fore Noy flode couerde all þe erthe,
16 knewe I bathe the, & thi dedis. I wate wele þou desyres for
to See þe haly treez of þe Soñ And þe Mone þe whilke tellez
þynges þat ere to come.’ ‘3aa for sothe,’ quop Alexander,
‘þer es na-þyng þat I desyre mare, það for to see það.’
20 And he was rizt gladd. Ðað saide þe alde mañ till hym:
‘And 3e be clene of flescly dede wit women, það es it leefull
to 3ow to see það and to entir in-to þat haly place þat es
a sette of godd. And if 3e be nozte clene, it es nozte leefull
24 to 3ow.’ ‘3is, sir, sothely,’ quop Alexander, ‘we ere clene.’
Ðað raise þe alde mañ vp of þe bedd þat he lay in, and
said vn-to það: ‘Puttez offe 3our rynges,’ quop he, ‘and 3oure
clathes, & 3our schone, and folowes me.’ And þay dyd¹ so.
28 And það Alexander tuk wit hym tholomeus and Antiochus,
& folowed þe alde mañ, and went thurgh þe wodd þat
was about oñ þe Mountayne closed with mannes handez.
þe * treesse of þat wodd ware an hundreth .c. fote lange &
32 hye, and þay ware lyke lorers or Olyue treesse; And out
of það þare rañ rykyles & fynne bawme. And as þay went
thurgh þat wodd þay saw a tree wondere hye, in þe whilke
þare satt a mekill fewle. Þat tree hadd noþer þare-oñ lefes ne
36 fryte. þe fewle þat satt þare-oñ hadd oñ his hedd a creste
lyk till a pacokke, & his beeke also crested. Abowte his nekke,
he hadd fethirs lyke golde. þe hynder of hym was lyk *purpure*;

metal and
stones.

He goes
into the
palace.

He finds an
aged man
there of
Bishop-like
appear-
ance.

He kneels
and salutes
him.

The aged
man speaks
and tells
him he
shall see
and hear
what never
earthly
man did
before. He

shall have
his desire
and know
the future.

He can only
see the holy
trees of the
sun and the
moon if
clean of
fleshy
deeds.

He must
pnt off
every-
thing to see
them.

Alexander,
Ptolemy,
and Anti-
ochus fol-
low the

* Leaf 39
bk.

old man
through the
wood on the
mountain,
through
wondrous
trees that
shed in-
cense and
balm.

¹ The scribe first wrote *de* and then changed the *e* into a *y*, making it into *dyd*.

They see the Phoenix. They come to the holy trees of the sun and the moon. The old man tells him to look up and think and the Spirit of the Trees shall answer his thought. These trees were high. The leaves of the sun tree golden red, of the moon tree shining white. Alexander would sacrifice to these trees but may not. The sun tree speaks in Indian or Greek, the moon tree begins in Greek and ends in the language of India. He gets his answer. He shall win the world but never see home again.

* Leaf 40.

Twenty months

and þe taylor was ownnded^r ouerthwert, wit a colour reede as rose & wit blewe. And his fethers ware riȝte faire schynand^r. When Alexander saw þis fewle he was gretely meruailled^r of þe faired^r of hym; það saide þe Alde mañ: 'Alexander,' quop^r 4 he, 'þis ilke fewle þat þou here seese es a fenix.' And það þay went forþer thurgh þe forsaid^r wodd^r, And come to thiese haly treez of þe soñ & þe mone þat growed in myddez of þe wodde. And það þe alde mañ saide tiȝt Alexander: 'Luke vp,' 8 quop^r he, 'to ȝone haly treez, and thynke in thi hert what preuatee so þe liste, and þou sañt hafe a trewe ansuere. Bot luke þat þou speke na worde in opyñ. And þare-by sañt þou witt þat it es a gude spiritt, þat knawes thi thoghte.' Thir 12 twa treez were wonder hye. And þe tree of þe Soñ had leues lyk fyne golde, reed & faire schynande. And þe tree of þe mone had lefes whitt als syluer & faire schynande. And það walde Alexander hafe Offrede Sacrafyce to þir treez. Bot 16 þe alde mañ walde noȝte suffre hyñ, bot said^r: 'It es noȝte leuefull,' quop^r he, 'in þis haly place, nowþer to offre encense, ne to slaa na bestez, Bot to knele douñ to þe boles of þir treez & kysse það & pray þe soñ & þe mone to giffe trew ansuers.' 20 And þan Alexander spirred^r þe alde mañ, in what langage þe treez sulde giffe þaire answers. And þe alde mañ ansuerd^r & said^r: 'The tree of þe Son,' quop^r he, 'answers owþer all in þe langage of Inde or eñs of grewe. And þe tree of þe Mone 24 begynnez wit þe langage of grewe & endez wit þe langage of Inde.' And as þay stode þus spekande, Sudaynly þare come a bryghte beme fra þe weste þat schane ouer all þe wodde. And það Alexander kneled^r douñ, and kyssede þe treez an 28 thoght þus in his hert: 'Sañt I conquere all þe werlde, and efterwardez wit þe victorye wende hame to Macedoyne tiȝt my moder Olympias, and my sisters? And * það þe tree of þe soñ ansuerd^r softly in þe langage of Inde, And said þir verseȝ: 32

'Tú dominātorum orbis dominus simul et pater extas,
Set patrum rignum¹ per tempora nulla videbis;'

þat es at say, 'þou ert bathe lorde & fader of alle þe werlde, Bot þe Rewme of thy Fadrys sañt þou neuer see wit thyñ eghne.' 36 það bygañ Alexander to thynke how lange he sulde lyffe,

¹ Sic in MS.

and whate dedd¹ he sulde dye. And þe tree of þe Mone
ansuerd¹ by þir twa versez :

shall he
live and his
friend shall
poison him.

‘Anno completo viues & mensibus octo,
De quo confidis tibi mortis pocula dabit.’

þat es at saye, ‘A twluemonth & aughte monethes sall þou lyffe.
And þaṅ he þat þou traistez oṅ, sall giffe þee a drynke of dedd.’
þaṅ bi-gaṅ *Alexander* to thynke in his hert oṅ þis wyse,

‘Tell me nõw, hály trèc,
Wha he ès þat sall sláa mèe.’

And þaṅ þe tree of þe soṅ ansuerd¹ by þir twa versez :

‘Si tibi pandatur vir qui tua facta resoluet,
Illum confrynges & sic mea carmina fallent.’

þat es at say : ‘And I schew the þe manes name, þat sall vndo
thi dedis, þou wilt slaa hym, and so sall my prophycye fayle.’

Did he
but know
the man's
name, he
would try
to undo the
prophecies.
The old
man bids
him not
incommode
the trees.

And þaṅ þe forsaide ald maṅ sayd¹ tiff *Alexander* : ‘Disese
na mare þir trees,’ quop he, ‘wit thyne askynges. Bot tourne
we agayne, as we come hedir.’ And þaṅ *Alexander* & his twa
pryncez wit hym tourned¹ agayne wit þe alde maṅ. And ay as
he went, he weped¹ bitterly, bi-cause of his schorte tyme ; and

his pryncez also weped¹ rihte sare. Bot he commanded¹ þaṅ þat
þay schulde nozte teffe to na maṅ of his Oste þat that þay hadd¹
herde & sene. And wheṅ þay ware comen¹ to þe forsaide Palace
þe alde [man] said¹ vn-tiff *Alexander* : ‘Torne bakke agayne,’

quoth he, ‘for it es nozte leefull to na maṅ to passe forthire.
If þe liste wende toward¹ þe weste, þou sall nozte trauelle full
lange are þou come to þe place, whare þe liste to bee.’ And
wheṅ þe alde maṅ had said¹ þir wordez, he went in-to þe palace

and *Alexander* and his twa pryncez went douṅ by þe forsaide
grecz & come to þe Oste.

He goes
away weep-
ing.
He com-
mands his
friends to
tell no
man.
The old
man bids
him turn
back and
travel to
the west.

1 Apon þe morne *Alexander* & his Oste remowed¹ þeine & went
agayneward¹ fyftene days, And come agayne to þe forsaide¹
playne & þare þay lused þaṅ. And þare at þe entree of þa
twa forsaide¹ ways, *Alexander* gart rayse vp twa pelers of Marble,
and by-twixe þaṅ he haude a table of golde, on þe whilke was
wretyn in þe langage of grewe, hebrew, of latyne, and of Inde,

one this wyse : ‘I, *Alexander*, Phillip¹ soṅ of Macedoyne,
journeys
fifteen
days and
then raises
up two
marble
pillars,
between
them a
table of

32
36

¹ Four lines with red capital A.

gold with
letters in
Greek,

* Leaf 40
bk.

Hebrew,
Latin, and
Indian,
telling of
his great
deeds and
guiding
after-
comers.

Thence
they go
westwards
towards
Macedonia
and come
to the
country of
Prasiac.

The men
of the
country
bring him
presents.
There is
in that
country a
city of
precious
stones

ruled over
by a widow
queen and
her sons.
Alexander
writes to
Queen
Candace
sending
presents,
asking her
to come
that they
may offer
sacrifice
together.

Queen
Candace
writes to
Alexander
on his con-
quests, but
proclaims
that they
may not

sett thir pelers here, after þe dedd̄ of Darius kyng of Perse
and of Porus kyng of Inde. What mañ so wiñ passe forþer
late hyñ * *tourne* one þe lefte hand. For wha so *tournez* one
þe riçte hande he sañ fynde many obstacle; & greuance; þat 4
sañ *peraventure* lett his agayne-commynge.'

¹ Fra þeine þay removed thurgh þat playne and lefte þase
strayte wayes, takand̄ þe way westeward̄ þe gayneste towarde
Macedoyne. And at þe laste þay come tiñ a cuntree þat highte 8
Prasiac, And þare þay lused̄ þañ. And wheñ meñ of þat
cuntree herd̄ of þe commynge of Alexander, wit grete wirchipe
þay broghte hym grete *presantez* of swilk thynges; as þay hadd̄
in þaire lande, þat es at say, skynnes of fischez lyke vn-to þe 12
skynnes of pardes, or of lyouns-also, and lawmpray skynnes of
sex cubites lange. In þat cuntree was a noble citee all̄ of
preçyous stanes made wit-owtten̄ lyme or sande, sett apoñ an
hiñ. Of þe whilke citee, a wirchipsuff̄ lady and a faire hadd̄ 16
þe lordechipe. Þis lady was wedowe and scho hadd̄ three
sones. The firste of þañ highte Candeolus, þe secand̄ Mar-
cipius, And þe thirde hight Carator. To þis lady Alexander
sent a *lettre* of þis tenour :

² Alexander þe soñ of godd̄ Amoñ & of þe quene Olympias,
kyng of kynges & lorde of lordes vn-to quene Candace of Meroñ
ioy & gretyng. We sende 3ow ane ymage of godd̄ Amoñ all̄
of fyne golde; And þarefore comez tiñ vs þat we may wende 24
togeder to þe Mountayne for to make sacrafyce þare to godd̄
Amon.' Wheñ þe Qwene Candace hadd̄ redd̄ þis *lettre*, Scho
sent hir *embassatours* tiñ kyng Alexander wit grete *presantez*
and with a *lettre* of this tenour :

³ Candace, quene of Meroñ, vn-tiñ Alexander, kyng of
kynges, ioy. Wele we knawe þat 3e hafe by reuelaciõ of
godd̄ Amoñ þat 3e schulde conquere Perse, Inde and Egipte,
and subiecte vn-to 3ow all̄ oþer nacions. And all̄ þat 3e hafe 32
done, nozte allanly was graunted̄ bot also of all̄ oþer goddez.
Tiñ vs þat hase faire saules & bryghte it nede; noghte to make
sacrafyce to godd̄ Amoñ in þe Mountaynes. Neuer-þe-lesse
bicause we wiñ nozte offende 3owere maiestatee, we sende tiñ 36

¹ Four lines with red capital *F* and small
f in margin beside.

a beside.

² Four lines with red capital *A* and

³ Four lines with red capital *C* and *c* in
the margin.

Amoñ 3oure godd^a a Coroñ of golde and precyouse stanes, And
 teñ chynes¹ of golde sett full of precious stanes. And vn-to
 3ow we sende a hundrethe Besauntez of golde; And twa
 4 hundreth papeiayes closed^d in cagez^{*} of golde, c childer of
 Ethipes, cc apes, cccc Olyphantis, xxxiiii^{xx} vnycornes, iij^{ij} panters
 skynnez, of pardez & lyounes cccc, and we beseke 3owre hye
 maieste þat 3e wili notyfyte vn-till vs bi 3our wirchipfull lettres,
 8 wheder 3e haue conquered^d alle þe werlde and made it subiecte
 vn-to 3ow or no3te.⁷ Amangez her embassatours þat scho sent
 till Alexander þare was a wonder crafty & a suteñ payntoure.
 And hym scho charged^d þat he schulde besely by-halde Alexander
 12 & purtray his fygure in a parchemyñ skynñ and brynge it to hir.
 And so he did. Alexander ressayued^d þe forsaid^d gyftes reuerently
 and sent hir noble gyftes agayne wit hir embassatours. And
 whēñ þay come hame þe payntour tuke hir þe feigure of Alexander
 16 purtrayed^d as I saide be-fore. And whēñ þe quene saw it, Scho
 was ri3te gladdē, for scho desyred^d grētly for to see his fygure.
² After þis ane of þe quene somes þat hight Candeolus went
 furthe of þe Citee wit his wyfe and a fewe of his men3ee for to
 20 take þe sporte. And onane þe kyng of þe Bebrikes, kuawying
 þe fairehed^d of Candeolus wyfe, come appoñ þañd with a grete
 multitude of meñ, and slew many of Candeolus men3ee and
 reſte hym his wyfe & went his way. And þañd Candeolus and
 24 his meñ þat ware leſte on lyfe went till Alexander Oste for to
 be-seke hym of helpe agaynes þe kyng of Bebrikes. And þe
 waches of þe oste tuke Candeolus & broghte hym bi-fore
 Tholomeus, þat was þe secund^d persoñ after Alexander. And
 28 Tholomeus spirred^d hym what he was, & what he did^d þare.
 ‘I am,’ quop he, ‘quene Candace soñ and þis day als I went
 wit my wyfe & a proueē men3ee for to take þe sporte, þe kyng
 of þe Bebrikes come apoñ vs wit a grete multitude of meñ and
 32 hase slayne many of my men3ee & reſte me my wyfe. And
 þare-fore I am comeñ heder for to beseke my lord^d, þe Emperour,
 of helpe & socoure.’ When Tholomeus had herd^d þis onane
 he garte take kepe of Candeolus & went till Alexander tentis
 36 and wakkned^d Alexander & talde hym & talde ilk a dele þat
 Candeolus had talde hym. And whēñ Alexander hadd^d herde

sacrifice
to Amon.
Neverthe-
less.

* Leaf 41.
she
sends him
presents—
a crown of
gold, a
hundred
bezants,
slave-
children,
and vari-
ous strange
beasts.
These gifts
she sends
by a painter
who is to
portray
Alexander
on a parch-
ment skin.
And so it
was done.

Candeolus
goes out of
the city
with his
wife and a
few for
sport. A
hostile
king know-
ing the
wife's
beauty
comes and
reaves her
away. Can-
deolus
comes for
help and
is brought
to Ptolemy.
He pro-
claims who
he is and
his errand.

Ptolemy
sends to
Alexander
and
wakens
him.

¹ *Chenes* first written; but when the scribe had written *e* he wrote *y* over it and joined it to the next letter.

² Four lines with red capital A.

Alexander bids Pto-
* Leaf 41
bk.
lemy put on a crown as though he were Alexander and let him send for Antiochus, and Alexander will come as Antiochus and ask counsel of Alexander as though he were Antiochus. Ptolemy does as Alexander bids him. Alexander then counsels that the king should be commanded to deliver up Candeolus' wife that night or otherwise destroy his city. Candeolus thanks Alexander as though he were Antiochus. Alexander does as he counsels and with a great force calls on the king to deliver back Candeolus' wife or else they will burn

his tale he badd' hym gange agayne tiff his tent and do a corouñ oñ his hede and putt apoñ hym þe kynges clothyng, * and sett hym in the kynges trone & say vn-to Candeolus þat he was kyng Alexander. 'And bidd' an of thi meñ,' 4
quop he, 'feche vn-to þe Antyochus, And late hym bryng me to þe insteedd' of Antyochus, and whēd I come bi-for thee telle me bi-fore Candeolus¹ aff þat he talde the. And aske me conseff, als I ware Antyochus, what es beste to do in þat mater.' 8
Tholomeus went and didd' aff als Alexander badd' hym. And he asched' Alexander in stedd' of Antyochus be-fore Candeolus what was beste to do. And Alexander ansuerd' & sayde on herand' Candeolus: 'Wirchipfull Emperour,' quop he, 'if it be 12
plesyng to your maiestee I wiñ go wit Candeolus þis same nyghte to þe kyng of þe Bebrikes, and comande hym one your byhalue þat he zelde Candeolus his wyfe agayne. And if he wiñ noyte do soo, I sañ late hym witt þat 3e sañ sende a grete 16
powere to his Citee & bryne it vp stikke & stourre.' When Candeolus hadd' herde hym say þus, he knelyd' vn-tiff hym & said: 'A a, wirchipfull Antyochus,' quop he, 'wele walde it seme þe for to be a kyng for þe hye witt and þe manhede þat es 20
in the.' Thañ kyng Alexander tuke wit hym a grete powere and went apoñ þe same nyghte wit Candeolus vn-to þe Citee, whare þe kyng of þe Bebrikes lay. And whañ þay come to þe citee, þe waytes cryed' apoñ þañd, and askede what þay ware. 24
And Alexander ansuerd' & sayd: 'Candeolus,' quop he, 'es here wit aue Oste of meñ, and þe cause of his commynge es to be restorede agayne of his wyfe þe whilke your kyng raueste away fro hym þis same day. And my lord' kyng Alexander com- 28
mandez 3ow þat 3e delyuer hir anone, or sewrely we sañ brynne this citee & 3our selfe are we passe hethyñ.' And whēd þe meñ of þe citee herde this, þay ware ferde ynoghe² and onane went to þe kynges palace & brakke vp þe 3ates, & tuke Candeolus 32
wyfe & delyuerd' hir tiff hir lorde. Þañ Candeolus kneled' douñ tiff Alexander & saide vn-tiff hym: 'A a, my dere frende,' quop he, 'wirchipfull Antyochus, Blyssed mot þou be for þis grete gudnes þat þou hase schewed' mee. And I beseke the nowe þat 36

¹ The scribe has written *Antyochus* instead of *Candeolus*, then scratched it out, and written *Candeolus* again.

² The scribe has first written *ynghē* and inserted the *o* above.

pou wilt vouche-saffe for to wende with me vn-to my moder quene Candace, þat scho may rewarde þe for þis þat þou hase done for me.' And when Alexander herde this he was riȝte gladde. For he had gretely desyrede for to see quene Candace & hir citee also. And þan he sayd: 'Goo we,' quoth he, 'to þe emperour and asche hym leue.' And þay did soo; and when he had leue, he went wit Candeolus. And as þay went to-gedir þay come tiff¹ heghe mountaynes þat reched vp to þe clowdes and apou þam þare growed trees of a wonderfull heghte lyke * vn-to² cedres þat bare appylls of Inde riȝte grete, Of þe whilk Alexander wonderde hym gretly. Þay saw also þare vynes growe wit wondere grete bobbis of grapes; for a mañ myȝte vnnetheȝ bere aȝd of þam. Þare ware also trees þat bare nuttez als grete als gourddeȝ. And þare ware also many apes. Fra þeine þay went & come to þe citee of quene Candace.

16 And when Candace herd teiff þat hir soñ Candeolus and his wyfe ware comande and ware safe & sounde, And at a messangere of kyng Alexander come wit þam, scho was wonder gladde; and onane scho arayed hir ryally as a quene suld be, and sett apou hir hedde a crouñ full ryche aȝf of golde sett full of precyouse stanes, and went furthe wit hir lordes to þe zates of hir palace, for to mete hir soñ Candeolus and Alexander messenger. This quene was a wondere faire lady & a semely; And when Alexander saw hir, hym thoghte als he hade sene his moder Olympias. Hir palace was wonder ryalle & precyouse and aȝf þe ruffe þare-of schane wit golde & precyouse stanes. Thaid quene Candace tuke Alexander bi þe hande, And ledd hym vp tiff hir chambir, whare þare ware beddes arayed wit þe fyneste clathes of golde þat myghte be getyȝ; And þat chambir was of golde & precyous stanes, þe whilke are called Onychyns & þe burdez & þe bynkes of enour & Smaragdez & Amatistes. Þe Pelers of þe Palace ware aȝf of Marble, And þar ware graued in þam cartes of werre, þat semed to mannes sighte as þay had bene rynnand; And Olyphauntes tredand meȝ vnder þaire fete. Vnderneþe þat Palace rane a water wonder swete, & clere as any cristaffe.

the city. The citizens revolt and return Candeolus' wife. Candeolus thanks Alexander again as Antiochus, and invites him to come to his mother's city. At this Alexander is glad, for he had greatly desired to see Queen Candace and her city. They ask leave of the Emperor as it were. He goes with Candeolus. They come to mountains that reach up to the sky, with wondrous tall trees and vines with great bunches of grapes and nut-like gourds, and many apes were there. They come to Candace, who comes arrayed to meet them as a queen. She is of great beauty; and her palace is rich. She takes him to her privy chamber with its wonderful works of art.

¹ The scribe first wrote 'an heghe', but then scratched out the *an*.

² On leaf 41 we have the words *lyke to*

þe cedres. On leaf 42 it continues *lyke vn-to cedres*.

þat day Alexander ete wit quene Candace & hir childre.

The next day she goes alone with Alexander to her with-drawing room, which lies beyond her bedroom. Her with-drawing room is moved on wheels by elephants. Alexander utters his wonder.

* Leaf 42 bk.

Queen Candace addresses him by name. Alexander's fear.

She shows him his portrait. Alexander fears again.

She rails at him that he, the conqueror of the world, is fallen into a woman's hands.

Alexander is angered. She rails at him further.

¹ Apoñ þe morne quene Candace tuk Alexander by þe right hande & ledd̄ hym in-tiff hir bedd̄-chambir, and nane wit þañ, Bot þay twa allañ. Þis chambir was couerde all ouer wit-in 4 wit golde & precious stanes. And it schane wit-in, as it had bene þe sonne. And oute of þis chambir scho ledd̄ hym in-tiff a wit-drawyng chambir made of cypresse. Þis chambir was sett apoñ foure wheles by crafte of clergy; And twenty xx^{ti} Oly- 8 phauntis drew̄ it whed̄ir as scho wolde hæfe it. And when Alexander & þe quene ware entrede in-to þat chambir, onane it stirred̄ & by-gan for to remowe. And þañ Alexander was astonayde & meruaylled̄ hym̄ gretly & said vn-to þe 12 quene: 'For sothe,' quop̄ he, '& þir meruaitis ware in oure cuntree þay ware riȝte commendable & mekill worthy* to be praysede.' The quene answerde: 'Þou saise sothe, Alexander,' quop̄ scho, 'þay ware mare commendable amangeȝ þe Grekeȝ, 16 þañ amangeȝ vs.' And also sone als Alexander herde hys name be neuenede, he was gretly trubblede, and his vesage bi-gañ to waxe pale, and his chere to change. And than the quene said este vn-to hym: 'Alexander,' quop̄ she, 'for to schewe 20 þe mare verrayly þat þou ert Alexander, com̄ with me.' And þañ scho tuk hym̄ by þe hande & leedde hym in-tiff anoþer chambir, and schewed̄ hym þare his awenid̄ Fyfigure purtrayed̄ in a parchemyñ skyne. And when Alexander saw þat, he wex 24 pale & wanne & biganne to tremblee. And þañ þe quene said vn-tiff hym: 'Alexander,' quop̄ scho, 'where-fore ert þou ferde, & why chaungeȝ þou chere. Thou þat hase destroyed̄ all þe werlde; conquerour of Perse, of Inde, of Mede, and many oþer 28 rewmes & landeȝ, Now arte þou witowtten̄ scheddynḡe of blode fallen̄ in þe dawngere & in þe handeȝ of quene Candace vnausyli. And þare-by may þou wele knawe þat a manes hert sulde on na wyse be enhanced̄ in pride. For if all it bee þat ofte tymmes 32 grete prosperitee fall̄ to mañ, Sodaynly falleȝ aduersitee tiff hym when̄ he leste wenes.' When Alexander herde þis he bigañ to grayste wit þe teethe and to torne his hede hedir & thedir, And quene Candace saide vn-tiff hym̄: 'Whare to 36 angers þou þe,' quop̄ scho, '& trubleȝ thi selfe? What may now thi grete Imperiañ glory, thi witt & thi mighte serue

¹ Four lines with red-capital A.

the offe?' Alexander ansuerde & said: 'Forsothe', quop Alexander, 'resonably I am angry at my selfe bi-cause I hafe na swerde here.' Quop þe quene: 'I suppose þou hadd a swerde, nowe, what walde do þare-wit?' 'Sothely,' quop he, 'bi-cause I hafe wilfully betrayed my-selfe vn-to þe. First I solde sla þe and það, I dowte it nozt, I sulde be slayne for þe.' 'Now for sothe,' quop scho, 'þis was wisely & manfully sayde. Neuer-pe-less be nathynge heuy. For as þou delyuerde my son wye Candeolus oute of þe daungere of þe kyng of Bebrikes Swaa saff I delyuer the oute of þe daungere of thynd enemys þat þou hase here. For I say þe in certayne, and it ware knawen þat þou ware here vn-to my menze, onane þay walde slaa þe by-cause þou slewe Porus þe kyng of Inde. For my son wye Carator was his doughter.' And when scho had said þis, Scho tuk Alexander bi þe hande & ledd hym forthe in-till hir forchambire and said vntill hir sones: 'My dere sonnes,' quop scho, 'I pray zow late vs make þis knyghte of Alexander gude chere, and schew hym all þe humanytee þat we can. For Alexander has schewed vs grete frendchipe and grete gudnesse.' And það hir zongeste ansuerde & said: 'Moder,' * quop he, 'sothe it es þat he es a messangere of Alexanders, & a knyghte of his, and þat he delyuerde my proper wye of þe hande of þe kyng of þe Bebrikes and broghte hym and hir hame vn-till vs bathe safe & sownde. Neuer-pe-lesse my wye constreynz me for to do Antyochus to dede bi-cause of þe dede of hir Fadir Porus, whilke Alexander slewe, So þat Alexander may hafe sorow for his knyghte. Quop quene Candace það: 'Lefe son, what wirchid may we get þare-offe if we slaa this knyghte þus traytourusly.' And það Candeolus sayde wit a grete Ire, 'Þis knyghte,' quop he, 'saued me & my wye & broghte vs hedir safe & sonde; And als saffe saff I hafe hym, agayne till his lorde, or I saff be dede þarefore.' And Carator ansuerde & saide: 'Proper,' quop he, 'what says þou? wilt þou þat aythere of vs here slaa oþer?' 'In gud faythe proper,' quop he, 'it es nozte my wilt, ne my liste. Neuer-pe-lesse if it be thi liste, I am redy, rather það þis knyghte be dedde.' And when þe quene saw þat hir sonnes walde ayther of það slaa oþer, scho was wonder sary, and tuk Alexander on syde, and saide vn-till hym preualy: 'A, a, kyng Alexander,'

Alexander is angry at himself. Had he but a sword he would slay her and die for it. She commends him, therefore she bids him not fear, for since he helped her son she will deliver him from another son who is Porus' son-in-law. She introduces Alexander as one of his own knights, Antiochus.

* Leaf 43
Her younger son would slay him for his wife's sake, to grieve Alexander.

Candeolus offers to defend Alexander with his own life.

Candace appeals to Alexander to save her sons from

combat by
his wit, so
that either
slay not
other.
Alexander
promises to
do so.
Alexander
offers to
betray
Alexander
to Carator.

quoþ scho, 'whi wilt þou noȝte schewe thi witt, and helpe
thurgh thi wisdom þat my somes slaa noȝt ayther of það
oper?' And Alexander answerde and said: 'Late me goo
speke wit þam,' quoþ he. And scho lete hym goo. And 4
he went to það and sayde vn-to Carator: 'For sothe, Carator,'
quoþ he, 'I late þe wite þat if þou slaa me, þou sañt wyne bot
lyttli wirchipe þareoffe. For I say þe, kyng Alexander hase
many worthyer knyghtis wit hym það I añd; And þarefore he 8
wilt hafe littli sorowe for my dede. Trowes þou þat and
Alexander hadd' lufed me wele þat he walde hafe sent me hyder
to be killeð amangeȝ ȝowe. Bot if þou wilt þat I bekeñd the
Alexander þe slaere of þi wyfe fader & bryng hym bi-for the, 12
Swere me þat what so I asche þe, þou sañt graunte mee it, And
I sure þe bi þe faythe of my body, I sañt bryng Alexander in-to
þis palace be-fore þe.' And when Carator herde this, he was
riȝte glade, and trowed þat that Alexander said. And so ware 16
þe twa breþer pesede, And highte Alexander þat his askynge
sulde be fulfilled als ferforthe als þaire powere reched, if so ware
þat he helde couenant. Það quene Candace leedd Alexander on
syde & sayð vn-till hym in preuatee: 'Wele ware me,' quoþ scho, 20
'myghte I ilke day hafe þe present be-fore myñd eghne as I hafe
myñd awenñd childere. For thurgh the sulde I ouercome añt
myñd Enemys.' And það [scho] gaffe Alexander a corouñd of golde
sett full of precyous dyamandeȝ, and a mantill Imperiañt 24
of a clathe of golde * wit sternes wofen þare-ñd, and sett full of
precyouse stanes. And það scho kyssed hym & oper preuee
thynges didd' till hym, And badde hym goo in hir blyssynge.

Carator
assents.

Queen
Candace
parts from
Alexander
with many
gifts.

* Leaf 43
bk.

Alexander
and Can-
deolus
come to
a cave.
Alexander,
sacrificing,
goes in.
He sees a
great god
sitting with
eyes like
stars.
The god
greets him.

¹ Than kyng Alexander and Candeolus went furthe añt that 28
daye, And come till a grete spelunc, and þare þay herberde
það. And Candeolus saide till Alexander: 'In this spelunc,'
quoþ hee, 'þat you here seeȝ añt goddeȝ ere wount for to ete and
halde þaire consañt.' And það onane Alexander made sacra- 32
fyceȝ till his goddeȝ and enterde in-to þe caue by hym ane.
And þare he sawe a myrke elowde, & in þat myrknesse, he sawe
as it ware bryghte sternes, and amangeȝ þase sternes he saw
a grete godd' sitt, And his eghne lyke twa lanternes. And when 36
Alexander saw hym he was so fered' þat he was as it hadd' bene

¹ Red capital *T* in four lines space and small *t* in margin.

in a transynge. And þaṁ þe godd̄ said vn-to hym̄: 'Haile,
Alexander,' quop̄ he. And Alexander ansuerde & said: 'Lorde,'
quop̄ he, 'what art þou?' 'I am,' quop̄ he, 'Sensoñchosis
4 þat gouerneþ þe kyngdom̄ of þe werlde and þat hasc made meñ
sugettes vn-to the. And þou hasc bigged þiselfe many ryalle
eitecþ. Bot temple walde þou naue make in þe wircippe of
me.' And Alexander ansuerd̄ & said: 'Lorde,' quop̄ he, ' & þou
8 wiff graunt me þat I sall wif prosperitec come in-to Macedoyne
I sall ordeyne the a temple þare sall noȝte be swilke anoþer
in all þe werlde.' And he ansuerd̄ agayne & saide: 'For
sothe,' quop̄ hee, 'Macedoyne sall þou neuer see wif thyn̄
12 eghne. Neuer-þe-lesse walke Innermare & luke what þou seeþ,'
Alexander þaṁ went forthirmare & saw anoþer myrke clowde
and saw a godd̄ sitt in a trone lyke a kyngge, and Alexander said
vn-till hym̄: 'Lorde,' quop̄ he, 'what art þou?' 'I am,' quop̄ he,
16 'þe begynnynge of all goddeþ and Serapis es my name. I sawe
the in þe lande of liby & nowe I see þe here.' 'Serapis,'
quop̄ Alexander, 'I beseke þe telle me wha it es þat sall sla
me.' Quod Serapis: 'I talde þe bi-fore, þat and þe cause
20 of a manes dede ware knaweñ vn-till hym̄, he solde dy for
sorowe. Þou hasc bygged a gloricus citee agaynes þe whilke
many emperours sall fighte. Þare-in sall thi graue be made
and þare-in sall þou be beried.' And þaṁ Alexander come oute
24 of þe caue, and tuke his leue at Candeolus and went till his Oste.

¹ One þe morne he remowed his Oste And come till a valay
þat was full of grete ²serpentes þe whilk hade in þaire heuedis
Grete smaragdeþ. Thir serpenteþ *lyffede all wif gyngere and
28 pepir þat growede in þe valaye. And ilke a zere þay feghte to-
gedir and many of þaṁ slaeþ oþer. Off þe forsaid Smaragdes
tuk Alexander sun̄ wif hym̄ of þe gretteste þat he couthe
gett.

32 ³Fra þeine þay remowed & come in-till a place in þe whilke
þare ware besteþ þat hade one ilke a fote twa clees as swyne
hasc, and þase clees ware throe fote brade wif þe whilke þay
smate Alexander knyghtes. Þay had also heuedes lyke swyne
36 & tayles lyke lyouns. Þare ware also amangeþ þaṁ grypes þe

Sensoñchosis reproves Alexander's neglect of him. Alexander swears to build him a temple in Macedonia. The god tells him he shall never see it again.

Alexander goes further into the cave and sees a god enthroned in the dark, Serapis, who foretells him where he shall be buried.

On the morrow he removes

* Leaf 44. his army and comes to a valley of strange serpents. They see other strange beasts and griffons who attack Alexander's knights. They could

¹ Three lines with red capital *O* and small *o* in the margin.

² MS. 'serpe' crossed out and 'serpentes'

written.

³ Three lines with red capital *F* and small *f* in the margin beside.

carry off a knight and his horse.

Alexander's knights fight manfully against them.

They come to a great river and make boats to cross over. The people of the country send Alexander gifts.

They find women in that river who slay men.

Two of them they capture.

They come to Gog and * Leaf 44 bk.

Magog, who are the ten tribes of Israel led out of their own land by a Persian king. They ask Alexander leave to come forth.

whilke smate kynghtes in þe vesage; reghte felly. Þay ware so strange þat ane of þaṁ wolde bere away an armed knyghte & his horse also. Þaṁ kynge Alexander rade hedir & þedir amange; his meṁ and comforthed þaṁ and badd þaṁ feghte 4 manly agaynes þaṁ wit speres and wit arowes. And so þay did. Bot þare was slayne of Alexander knyghtes ccviii.

¹ And fra þeine þay removed and come tiff a grete ryuer þe whilke was twenty furlange on brede fra þe ta banke to 8 þe toþer. And on þase bankes þare growed redis wonder grete and hye. Of þase redes garte Alexander mak bates & anynte þaṁ wit terre & talgh of bestez, And badd his knyghtis row ouer þe water in þase bates. And þay did soo. And when þe 12 [pople]² of þe cunn-tree herde telf of þe commynge of Alexander & his Oste, þay sent hym gyftes of swylk thynges als was in þaire cuntree, þat es at say Grete spounge; bathe whitte & purple & schelles of þe see so grete þat an of þaṁ walde 16 halde twa pekkes or three. Þay sent hym also wormes þat þay drew owte of þat ryuer grettere þaṁ a manes thee, and þay ware swetter of taste þaṁ any fysche. Þay gaffe hym Cukstoles aff rede þat ware of a wonderfull gretnesse. In þat ryuer ware 20 womans þat ware wonder faire & þay hade on þaṁ mekiff here þat rechedd doun to thaire fete. Þir women, when þay saw any straunge meṁ swymme in þat riuer, owþer þay drowned þaṁ in þe water, or elts þay walde lede þaṁ to þe rede; þat 24 growed on þe water bankes and garre þaṁ lye by þaṁ ay tiff any lyfe was in þaṁ. Þe Macedoynes persued þaṁ & tuke twa of þaṁ and broghte þaṁ tiff Alexander,* and þay ware als white as any snawe, and þay ware ten fote lange and þaire 28 teethe ware lyke dogge teethe.

³ Efter this Alexander went and closed in a maner of folkes þat are called Gog & Magog, with-in þe hille; of Caspy. Þis folke; were of þe ten kynde; of Israel, and þay ware leedd owte 32 of þaire awenn land bi a kyng of Perse be-cause of þaire synne; and halden in thralledon. And þay asched Alexander leue for to wende furth of þat cuntree. And Alexander gert spirre þe cause of þaire thraldon, and he was encensed þat be-cause þay 36

¹ Three lines with red capital A and small a in margin beside.

² MS. reads, And when þe of þe cunn-tree

(? þe[i] of, &c.).

³ Three lines with red capital E and small e in the margin beside.

hadd' forsakeid' þaire goddez lawe, þat es at say, godd' of Isrl̄, and wirchiped' Calnes & oper Mawmettes, þare-fore þay ware ledd' oute of þaire awend' lande & haldeid' in thralldom̄, and þat
 4 prophetes had' prophiced' be-fore þat þay sulde neuer come oute of thralldom̄ bi-fore agayne þe day of dome. And þauid' Alexander ansuerde & said' þat he sulde sperre þauid' In mare seurely. And þauid' he garte close all' þe entreez wit stane & lyme & sand; Bot
 8 all' þat he garte make on þe day was fordone ovid' þe nyghte. And when' Alexander saw þat mannes laboure myghte nozte staude in stede, he bi-soghte godd' of Isrl̄ þat if it ware his liste þat þay habade þare, þat he walde close þauid' in. And þe nexte nyghte
 12 aftir ilk a cragge feste tiff' oper, and so þare may nathynge passe in nor owte. And þare-by it semez þat it es nozte goddez will' þat þay come oute. Neuer-pe-lesse abowte þe Ende of þe werlde þay sall breke oute and do mekill' schathe & slaa many
 16 meid'.

¹ Fra þeine þay removed' & come to þe grete See Ooceane. In þat See þay sawe ane Ile a littiff' fra þe lande. And in þat Ile þay herde meid' speke grewe. And þauid' Alexander commanded'
 20 þat sunid' of his knyghts sulde do off' þaire clathes and swyme ouer to þe ile. And þay did' soo. And als sone als þay come in þe See þare come gret crabbes vp oute of þe water & pullede þauid' downne to þe grounde & drowned' þauid'.
 24 ²Thanne removed' þay fra thethyid' and went ay endlande þe See syde to-warde þe solstice of wynter trauellande xt' days; and at þe laste þay come to a reede See, and þare þay lugede þauid'. Þare was faste by a Mountayne wonder hye, One
 28 þe whilke Alexander went vp. And when' he was abowid' ovid' þe heghte þare-offe, hym thoghte þat he was nerre þe Firmament þan þe erthe; þauid' he ymaged' in his hert swilk a gynid' how he myghte make * gripes bere hym vp in-to þe ayere. And
 32 onane he come doune of þe Mountayne and garte come bi-fore hym his Maistre wrightes and comandid' þauid' þat þay sulde make hym a chayer and trelesse it wit barrez of Ireid' one ilk a syde so þat he myzte sauely sitt þare-in. And þauid' he gart
 36 brynge foure gripes and tye þauid' faste wit Ireid' cheynes vn-to þe chayere, and in þe ouermare party of þe chayere he gart putt

¹ Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* in the margin beside.

² Three lines with red capital *T* and small capital *T* in margin.

But he learns that they had forsaken the True God for idols, and therefore they are banished and imprisoned till Doomsday. Alexander says he shall bar them in more surely. God answers his prayers, and rocks fall down and shut them in until Doomsday, when they shall come forth to do great harm. They come to the sea and an isle near the shore. They hear men speak Greek there. Alexander's messengers to the isle are killed by crabs. They travel along the * Leaf 45. seashore to the Red Sea. Alexander goes up a mountain. His master workers make him

a chair
whereby
he is borne
by griffons
up into the
air.

He comes
down about
ten days'
march
from his
army.
Then he
lusteth to
know the
depths of
the sea.
The master
glaziers
make him
a glazen
cage with
iron bars
and it is
lowered
down
into the
sea, and
there he
beholds
many won-
ders and
strange
beasts until
he is drawn
up again
by his
knights.

They
march on
and have
to fight
* Leaf 45
bk.
strange
horned
beasts.
They come
to the wil-
derness of

mete for þe grippes. And þaṁ he wente and sett hym in þe chayere. And onane þe grippes bare hym vp in þe ayer so hye þat Alexander thoghte all þe erthe na mare þaṁ a flure þare meṁ thresscheȝ corne, and þe See lyke a dragon abowte 4 þe erthe. Þaṁ sodaynly a speeyall vertu of godd vmbilapped þe grippes þat gart þaṁ discende doune to þe erthe in a felde : ten .x. day iournee fra þe Oste, and he hadd na hurt ne na schathe in þe chayere. Bot wit grete disesse at þe laste he 8 come till his Oste.

¹ After þis Alexander ymageden in his hert þat he walde knaw þe preuates þat are in þe see. And onane he gart come bifore hym all þe Maister glasyers þat ware in þe Oste, And comandede 12 þaṁ to make hym a grete tounne of passandy clere glasse þat he myghte thurgh it clerely see all maner of thyng þat ware wit-owtten it. And when it was made he gart trelesse it al abowte witowtten wit barres of yreṁ and feste þare-to lang cheynes of 16 yreṁ, and gart a certane of þe strangeste & maste tristy knyghtes þat langed vn-till hym halde þir cheynes. And þaṁ he went in-to þe tounne & gart pykke wele þe entree whare he went in, and þaṁ late it doun into þe See. And þare he sawe dyuerse 20 schappes of fisches of dyuerse colours; and suṁ he sawe hafe þe schappe of dyuerse besteȝ here one þe lande, gangande on fete as besteȝ dose here & etande fruyte of treesse þat groweȝ on þe See grunde. Þir besteȝ come till hym. Bot onane as þay 24 saw hym thorow þe glasse þay fledde fra hym. He sawe þare also many oper meruaylous thynges, þe whilke he walde tell na maṁ bi-cause meṁ walde noghte hafe trowed þaṁ if he had talde þaṁ, and at a certayne houre þase þat he hadd assyngned 28 be-fore, his knyghtes drewe hym vp oute of þe See.

² Fra þeine þay Remowed Folowande þe bankes of þe Rede See, and lused þaṁ in a place, whare þare ware wylde Besteȝ that hade cṁ þaire heuedis hornes lyke vn-to * sawes, and þay 32 ware als scharpe als swerdeȝ. And with thire hornes þay slewe & hurte many knyghtis of Alexanders & cloue þaire cheldes in sonder. Neuer-þe-lesse Alexander knyghtis slew of þaṁ ccecli.

³ And fra þeine þay removed and come in-till wilderness 36

¹ Four lines with red capital *A* and small *a* in the margin beside.

² Three lines with red capital *F* and

small *f* in margin besides.

³ Three lines with red capital *A* and small *a* in the margin beside.

bitwex þe reed̄ See and Araby, whare grete multitude of Pepir
growed̄; And þare ware many grete nedders wīt hornnes on
þaire hedes lyke tuppe hornes, wīt þe whilke þay smate Alex-
4 ander knyghtis riȝt felly. Off þase nedderes slew þe Macedoynes
a grete party.

¹ Þeine þay removed̄ and lugeđ in a place whare many
Rynosephales ware, þe whilke hade lieuedes & manes lyke
8 horseȝ. And þay hade grete bodys, and wonder grete teethe
and lange, and oute of þaire mouthes þay schotte flawmeȝ
of fyre. And wheñ þay saw þe Oste luge þare þay come
& assaylled̄ þañ. And Alexander rañ hyder and thedir
12 amangeȝ þe oste and comforthed̄ his knyghtes and bad þañ
feghte manly wīt þase monstres. And so þay didđ. Neuer-þe-
lesse þare ware a grete multitude of his knyghtis slayne of þase
bestes. Bot of þe Rynocéphales þare was slayne an hugge
16 multitude.

² Þañ þay removed̄ fra þeine and come in-till a champayne
cuntree and lugeđ þañ þare, And lay þare a certane days,
Bi-cause of his horse Buktyphalas þat felt seke þare; of þe
20 whilke sekenesse he dyed̄. And wheñ Alexander saw hym dedđ
he made grete dole for hym and weped̄ for hym riȝt sare. For
he hadđ borne hym in many a Batelle, and broghte [hym] oute of
many perefis. And þare-fore wheñ he was dede Alexander
24 gart doo aboute hym grete exequyes and gart make hym a full
riche tounge & a hye and didđ hym þare-in and made a grete
citee þare, þe whilke in mynde of his horse he gart call Bukty-
phalas.

28 ³ Fra þeine þay removed̄ and come till a ryuere ⁴ þat was called
Cytan or Deciracy whare meñ of þe cuntree broghte hym
v̄ Olyphantes and v̄ cartes of werre. And fra þeine þay
removed̄ & come till kynges ȝerses palace. And in þat Palace
32 þay fande beddes of clene golde many a thowsande. Þare ware
also grete fewles white als doufes, þe whilke had knawung
be-fore of a seke mañ wheder he schulde lyffe or dye. For
if þay by-helde þe seke mañ in þe vesage, he schulde mende &
36 fare wele. And if þay touned̄ þam awaywarde wītowtten

pepper
trees and
horned
adders.

They meet
and have
to fight
Rhinceri
that spit
forth fire.

They fight
them
fiercely.

Alex-
ander's
steed Buce-
phalus dies.
He makes
a rich tomb
and builds
a city
round him.

They come
to the
palace of
Xerxes.

The birds
that fore-
tell the life
or death of
a man.

¹ Three lines.

² Three lines.

³ MS. has a small *f* written in margin,
but no space for the large capital to be put.

⁴ The scribe first wrote *reuer*, then
altered it to *ryuere*, then scratched it all out
and wrote *ryuere* after it.

* Leaf 46. doute he schulde dye,* and if þay tourned hym þe bakke wit owtteñ dowte he sulde dye.

They come to Babylon and capture it.

Thence Alexander writes to his mother and to Aristotle.

¹ FRA þeine þay remowed and come to þe grete Citee of Babiloyne and wanne it oo werre and slew þe kyng þare-offe 4 & þe Captayne also. And þare he duelled vn-till his lyffes end; and þat was Bot vij seuē Monethes. In þat mene tyme Alexander sent a lettre till Olympias his Moder and till his Mayster Arestotle, latand þam witte of þe Batells and þe dyssese 8 þat þay suffred bathe wynters aud Somers in Inde and oper cuntrees, and also of þe Batells þat þay hadd wīt dyuerse Monstres. And þam Arestotle wrate anoper lettre till Alexander agayne þe whilke was of this tenour :

Aristotle writes to Alexander again praising him greatly for his victories.

² ' Un-till Alexandere þe grete kyng of kynges; Arestotle sendeȝ ioy and seruyce. When I hade redde ȝour wyrchipfull lettres I was gretly astonayd. For whilke cause I desyre with all myñ hert for to fynde lonyng þat I myghte ȝelde vn-to þe. 16 I take witnessse at oure goddeȝ þat for þe passande hardenesse of þi hert & þe grete aentours þat þou hase put þe in, þou erte wele worthy for to be loued & praysede. For þou hase sene & assayed thyngeȝ þat neuer mañ or þis durste assaye. Whare-for 20 thankynge & lonyng I ȝelde to þe makere of all þis wyde werlde þat swylke victoryes hase grantede vn-to þe. For þou hase ouercommēd all & nane hase ouercomeñ þe. Full blyssede are all thy prynceȝ þat hase bene obeyande vnto þe, and helped' þe 24 in all thi disesseȝ.'

Alexander has a wondrous throne made.

The throne of Alexander with its images, its ruby, and its inscriptions.

³ Afftir þis Alexander gart make in Babyloyne a wonder curious trone ⁴ of golde, þare was noȝte swilke anoper in þe werlde. For þe grekeȝ broughte so mekiñ golde oute of perse & 28 oute of Inde, þat it ware wonder for to telle. Þis ilke toure was twlue cubyteȝ hie and by twelue greceȝ ⁵ meñ ascended þare-too, and þase greceȝ ware all of golde. Þis trone was wonderfully wroghte and sett apouñ twelue ymageȝ of golde, þe 32 whilke trone þe forsaid ymageȝ helde vp wīt þaire hende. And on þase twelue ymageȝ ware wretyñ þe names of þe twelue prynceȝ of Macedoyne. Þe seet of þe trone was of a Smaragde,

¹ Three lines with big capital *F* followed by small capital.

² Four lines with red capital *U* and small *u* in the margin.

³ Four lines with red capital *A* and

small *a* in the margin beside.

⁴ *ture* scratched out and *trone* written in.

⁵ The first part of this word reads *gr + blot + ceȝ*.

& þe sydeþ þare off ware of Topazes & in ilkañ of þe greeþ ware sett dyuerse maneres of precyouse stanes. In þe summyt of þis trone þare was sett a ruby þat schane on þe nyghte as it hade
 4 bene þe Mone. In þis trone also was þare sett oñ ilke a syde dyuerse ymageþ on þe whilke ware wretyñ bathe in latyne & in grew* verseþ þat contened^r añ þe nammes of þe rewmes & cuntreeþ þat Alexandere had conquered^r and ware sugetes vn-till hym.

* Leaf 46 bk.

8 ¹ After þis ⁴ Alexander gert make a corowñ of golde sett full of añ maner of precyouse stanes, and gert wryte apowñ it a tytle in grew & in latyñ: 'Ortus & occasus, Aquilo michi seruit & Auster.' Þat es at saye: 'Est & weste, Northe & southe dose
 12 seruyce vn-to me.' In the mene tyme whils Alexander was in babyloyne, a womañ was delyuer of a knaue childe þe whilke fra þe heuede to þe nauyñ hadð schappe of mañ, & was borne dedð. And fra þe nauyñ downwardes it had lyknesse of dyuerse
 16 besteþ and was qwykke. Þis Monstre was takeñ & broghte till Alexander; and als soñ als he saw it he meruaylled^r gretly þare-off, and gart come bi-fore hyñ a philosopher þat couthe of wiche-crafte, & aschede hym what it sygnfyed^r. And when þe
 20 philosopher saw it, he syghede, & saye wepand^r sayde vn-to hym: 'Sothely wirchipfull emperour,' quop he, 'þe tyme commez nere that þou salñ passe oute of this werlde.' 'Telle me,' quop Alexander, 'whareby þou knawes þat.' And þe philosophre
 24 ansuerde & sayde: 'My lorde,' quop he, 'þe halfe of þis Monstre þat hase þe schappe of mañ & es dedð, betakens þat þou salñ passe out of þis werlde in haste. And þe toper party þat hase þe lyknes of dyuerse besteþ & es on lyfe, betakyngeþ þe kynges
 28 þat salñ come after þe. Bot þare salñ nane of þañ be lyke vn-to þe, na mare þañ a beste es lyke vn-till a mañ.' When Alexander herde þis he was wonder heuy, and sare wepand^r he sayde on þis wyse: 'O Allmyghty Iubiter,' quop he, 'what
 32 menez it þat my dayes salñ be so schortte? Me thynke þat it had bene semely þat I had leffed^r langere for till haf endid^r thynges þat are in my thoghte. Bot for als mekill als it es nozte plesande vn-to þe, I beseke the þat þou resayffe me when
 36 I salñ passe hethed^r als thyñ aweñ seruante.'

The crown of Alexander and the inscriptions thereon.

The strange child born in Babylon half alive and half dead, half man and half animal, and the meaning it has. The death of Alexander and the coming of his successor. In what they shall not be like him.

The sorrow of Alexander.

Antipator wishes for

¹ Three lines with red capital *A* and small *a* in the margin beside.

² Four lines with red capital *I* and small *i* in margin beside.

the death
of Alex-
ander, who
is warned
of him by
Olympias.

Antipater, þe whilke of langetyme be-fore hadd̄ casten for þe dedde of Alexander; And wit many oper þat he hadd̄ confedred̄ vn-till hym̄ he conspyred̄ for to brynge it tyll ende, bot he myghte neuer come aboute þer-with. For Olympias, Alex- 4
ander moder, wrate vn-till hym. ofte-sythes and warned̄ hym þat he scholde be warre wit Antipater & his childre, and here-fore was Antypater wonder sary. So apoñ a tyme he vmby-thoghte hym þat he myghte neuer come aboute wit his purpose 8
for to slaa Alexander, bot if it ware thurgh̄ enpuysonynge. *And so apoñ a daye he went till a Soteñ leche, and boghte of hym̄ a maner of drynke made of puysoñ that was so feste & so ranke þat þare myghte no vesselle halde it Bot a vessell made of Ireñ; 12
and þare-in he putt it. And þañ he gaffe it his soñ Cassandre, and bad̄ hym bere it till his broþer Iobas and byd̄ hym, quop̄ he, gyffe it to kyng Alexander in his drynke, wheñ he seez his tyme. This ilk Iobas was a faire zong mañ & was duellyng with 16
Alexander, and gretly by-luffede & cheriste of hym. Bot so it be-feste apoñ a tyme þat Alexander smate Iobas on þe heued̄ wit a warderere for na trespasse. Where-fore Iobas was gretly angred̄ and grieved̄ at Alexander and consented̄ till his dede, and 20
take þe puysoñ of his broþer þat was ordeyned̄ for Alexander dede þat luffed̄ hym̄ so mekiff̄.

* Leaf 47.

He buys
poison and
gives it to
his son to
have it
given to
Alexander
by a pro-
tégé whom
he has
struck.

¹ And apoñ a daye Alexander gart ordeyne a grete reuelle in Babyloyn and called̄ þare too all his prynce; oñ ilke a syde. 24
And as he satt at þe mete Imanage his prynce; he was wonder mery & gladde & iocund; and reheted̄ his lordez & prayed̄ þañ þat þay schulde be mery. þañ Iobas þat serued̄ þe kyng of his coupe take of þe puysoñ a porcyoñ, and putt it vnder þe nayle 28
of his thowme, and broghte þe coppe to þe kyng full of wyne. And as he gaffe it to þe kyng, he lete þe puysoñ falle in þe wyne priually. And als sone als þe kyng hadd̄ dronkeñ þe puysoñ, Sudaynly he gaffe a grete scryke, and lened̄ hym down̄ 32
toward̄ þe riȝte syde. For hym thoghte reghte als a mañ hadd̄ smyteñ hym in-to þe lyuere wit a suerde. Neuer-þe-lesse he feyned̄ & forbare a while & suffred̄ a grete penance, and wheñ he myzte na langere habyde, he rase vp fra þe burde and 36
saide till his lordez & his knyghtes: 'Lordyngis,' quop̄ he,

His protégé
gives
the king
a drop of
poison in
his cup
from his
thumb.
Alexander
cries
out with
pain, but
forbears
awhile
to leave
the feast.

¹ Three lines with red capital *A* and small *a* in the margin beside.

‘ I pray 3ow sitt 3e still & etez & drynkez & bee3 mery.’ Bot
 þay ware gretly troubled^d and rase vp fra þe burdez and stode
 witowtweid for to see þe ende. And Alexander went in-till
 4 his chambir gretly tourmentid^d, and soghte a fethir for to putt
 in his throtte for to garre hym hafe a vomet of þe puyson^d
 þat he hadd^d resayffed. And Iobas, þat was cheffe of all this
 hye treson^d, gatt a fethir & enoynt it wit þe same puyson^d
 8 & broghte it till Alexander; and he tuk it & putt it in his
 throtte, and belyfe * þe puyson^d vexed^d hym ay mare & mare.
 And þan Alexander bade ane gange & open^d þe palace 3ates
 þat ware on Eufrates banke. And alle þat nyzte he woke
 12 in grete paynez & tourment. And aboute mydnyzthte he rase
 oute of þe bedde þat he lay in and putt oute þe lyghte þat brynt
 by-fore hym, and for he myghte noghte ga vprightez, he creped^d
 one hende & one fete doune to-warde Eufratez for till hafe
 16 drownned^d hym selfe, þat þe strenth of þe water myzth hafe
 borne hym away whare neuer mañ solde hafe fuñd hym.

And Rosañ his wyfe folowed^d as faste as scho myghte. And
 when^d scho come to hym scho felle vpon hym & embraced^d hym
 20 in hir armes & said^d vn-till hym: ‘ Allas, my lorde Alexander,’
 quop scho, ‘ wilt þou now leue me & gaa slaa thi-selfe.’ And
 scho wepe þat it was dole to see; and Alexander ansuerde
 & sayde: ‘ I beseke þe Rosañ,’ quop he, ‘ þat ert so dere to me
 24 & so swete, late nane wit of myñd Endynge, if all it be þat we
 may na langare hafe ioy togedir.’ And þan Rosañ ledd^d
 Alexander agayne to his bedd, and layde her armes aboute his
 nekke and kyssede hym many a tyme, and sare wepand said^d
 28 vn-till hym: ‘ A, A, my swete lorde,’ quop scho, ‘ if þine ende be
 nowe comen^d, ordayne firste for vs or 3e passe heþine.’ And
 onane he callede vn-till hym Iobas & bade hym feche vn-till
 hym Semyon his notary. And when^d he was comen^d he garte
 32 bere hym down^d in-to þe haulle, and he garte come by-fore hym
 all his prynce3 & bade his notary wryte his testament bi-fore
 þan^d all on^d þis wyse.

¹ ‘ ARestotle oure dere Maister, we comande the & prayse the,
 36 þat of oure awen^d tresour þou sende to þe preste3 of Egipt þat
 ministrez in þe temple, where-in oure body sall be beryed

¹ Three lines with red capital *A*, and small *a* in the margin beside,
 small capital *R* following.

He uses a
 feather to
 spew it
 forth, but
 again the
 feather is
 poisoned.

* Leaf 47
 bk.
 In his
 agony he
 goes to the
 Euphrates
 to drown
 himself.

But his
 wife
 Roxana
 follows and
 prevents
 him
 and tries to
 console
 him.

She asks
 him first to
 provide for
 her.

He calls his
 notary.

He com-
 mands
 Aristotle
 to give to

the Egyptian priest of his mausoleum. Ptolemy is the governor. If Roxana bear a man child he shall be Emperor ; * Leaf 48. if a girl they shall choose their own. He appertains his domains.

The earthquake.

The Macedonians come armed and demand to see their Emperor.

He prays his knights bear him before them.

He praises them. They speak with him and pray

& entered, ȝ besandez of golde. Also I wiſt that Tholomeus pat es kepare of oure body be *your* Gouvernour, And forgetis noghte my laste wiſt, Bot lateȝ my testament be alway bi-fore *your* eghne so pat it be fulfilled & noghte forgetyū. My wiſt es also pat if Rosaū my wyfe be delyuer of a knafe childe pat he be *your* Emperour and gyffeȝ hym what name so ȝow liste, and if scho be delyuer of a mayden childe, paū es it my wiſt pat the Macedoynes chese paū a kyng, and pat my wyfe be lady of * all my mobles. Also I wiſt pat Tholomeus be kyng of Egipt, and pat he tak tiſt his wyfe Cleopatra, pat my Fader wedded sumtyme here bi-fore, and pat he be lorde & prynce ouer all þe lordez of þe Este eueū vn-to Bactriaū. Also I wiſt pat my broþer Arrideus be kyng of þe Pelopones, also pat Cleopater be kyng of Perse, Mellagere kyng of Ethopy, And Anthiochus be kyng vn-to þe landez of Gog & magoge, Arestez kyng of Inde, Lissymacus lorde of Seleuce, Lythamoū kyng of hungary, Caulus kyng of Ermony, Illicus kyng of Dalmace. Symeoū my Notary, wiſt I, be Kyng of Capadoce & Pamphily, Cassander & Iobas be lordez vn-to þe Ryuer pat es called Soff, Antipater þaire Fader be kyng of Cicile. When this testament was in wrytyng bi-fore Alexander Sodeynly þare come a thonnere & a leuennyng & ane erthedouū riȝte a hedous, so pat all babyloyne qwoke þare-wit. And than thorowte all Babyloyne þe noyse rase pat Alexander was dede. And paū all þe Macedoynes rasse hallely and come armed to þe Palace, and cryed on þe prynceȝ & said vn-to paū : ‘Sothely,’ quop þay, ‘but if ȝe onauē schewe vs oure Emperour we saſt slaa ȝow ilk ane.’ And when kyng Alexander herde swilke noyse he askede whate it ment, and þe prynceȝ ansuerde & sayde : ‘Þe Macedoynes,’ quop þay, ‘are comen armede hedir before þe ȝates, & says sekerly bot if þay see ȝow þay saſt slaa vs alle are þay passe heþine.’ And when Alexander herde þis, he badd his knyghtis pat þay scholde take hym vp, and bere hym in-to þe consistorye. And þay did soo. And paū he garte open þe Palace ȝates pat þe Macedoynes myȝte come by-fore hym. And paū kyng Alexander be-gaū to comend paū of þaire strenth & þaire grete doghtynes, and charged paū pat þay scholde be in pesse & reste ilkane wit oper. Paū þe Macedoynes, sare wepande, sayde vn-tiſt Alexander : ‘A, A, wirchipfull,’ quop þay, ‘ordayne & tesse vs are ȝe passe

heyne whaū 3e wiſt þat be oure emperour efter 3ow.' And Alexander ansuerd & sayde, 'A, A, my dere knyghtis,' quop he, 'whē I am dede whayū so 3e wiſt cheſe, be 3our emperour 4 efter mee.' And þay ansuerde, 'Lord,' quop þay, 'we beſeke 3owe þat 3e wiſt graunt vs Perdic to be oure Emperour.' 'I vouche wele ſaffe,' quop Alexander, 'þat Perdic be 3our Emperour. Gers hym come be-fore mee.' ¹ And whē he was 8 comē by-fore hym he gaſſe hym þe kyngdome* of Macedoyne wit þe Emperourchipe. And he gaſſe hym also Roſaū for to be his wyffe, and prayed hym þat he walde be gude & gentill till hir. And þan he kyssede all þe lordez & þe knyghtis of 12 Macedoyne ilkane after oþer, and sighed and weped wonder sare. Þare was þaū so grete dole & wepyng, þat it was lyke a thonere. For meū Supposez þat nozte allanly meū made Sorow for þe dede of so worthy ane Emperour, Bot also þe soū 16 and all þe oþer planetis and elementes ware troubled.

² A prynee of Macedoyne stode nere Alexander bedd þat highte Seleucus, & wit grete dole & wepyng he sayd: 'A, A, þou wirchipfull emperour,' quop he, 'what ſall we do whē þou 20 ert dede. Philippe pi fader gouerned vs wele & alle oure rewme, Bot þe gentilnes & þe largesse of the na tunge may tell.' And þaū Alexander sett hym vp in his bedd and gaſſe hym selfe a grete flappe on þe cheke and by-gaū for to wepe rizte 24 bitterly, and in þe langage of Macedoyne, he sayde on þis wyse :

'Full waa es me vnhappy wreche,' quop he, 'þat euer I was borne to maū. For now Alexander dyes and Macedoyne ſall waxe ay lesse & lesse and emenische day bi day.' Thaū all þe Macedoynes wit an hye voyce and bitter wepyng sayd vn-till hym: 'Better it ware till vs,' quop þay, 'for to dy wit þe þaū for to se þe dy in oure presence. For wele we wate þat, efter þe dede of the, þe kyngdom of Macedoyne es vndone for euere. 32 Allas oure wirchipfull Alexander, why leses þou vs here and wendez away be thyū ane, withowteū thi Macedoynes?' Thaū kyng Alexander alway sighand & wepand said vn-to þam: 'A, A, my dere Maceoynes,' quop he, 'fra this tyū forwarde 36 ſall neuer 3our name haſe lordchipe ouer þe Barbarenes.' And þaū þe Macedoynes cryed and sayde: 'O wirchipfull lorde,' quop

him for Perdicas for their king.

He gives

* Leaf 48 bk.

Perdicas Macedonia and the Emperourship, and also Roxana as wife.

He kisses all the Macedonian Lords.

Selucus grieues by Alexander's bedside that they shall have no good leader.

Alexander bewails his fate that Macedonia shall dwindle with his death. All the Macedonians say it were better to die with him.

The grief of the Macedonians.

¹ Three lines with red capital *A*, and smaller *a* in the margin beside.

² Four lines with red capital *A*, and small *a* in the margin beside.

þay, 'þou ledd¹ vs in-to Perse, Arraby, and Inde, and vn-to the werldeꝝ ende, and in-to what cuntre þat þe liste wende; why, lorde, fleez þou now fra vs? Lede vs wit the whedir so þou gase.'

Alexander sends rich gifts to the Temple of Apollo in Athens and makes order for the embalming of his body.

* Leaf 49.

His death.

The funeral of Alexander.

His burial and wonderful tomb.

The description of Alexander.

The years of his life and his warlike deeds.

Það kyng Alexander sent to þe templee of Appollo in 4
Athenes many riche iowels, and on þe same wyse till all oper
temples. And það he commanded þat when he ware dede, þay
schulde enoynte his body and embawme it wit riche oynementes,
þe whilke kepis menes bodys in graues wit-owtten corupciouñ. 8
Það he hadde Tholomcus þat he scholde [take] a c̄ besantes of
golde, & þare-off gere make hym a tombe in Alexander. And
onane * as he had commanded hym þus, one-seeand það all, he
swelt. And það his prynceꝝ lifte vp his body, and did apoñ his 12
clethyng of astate and putt a riche corouñ oñ his heued, and
sett hym in þe emperours chayer, þe whilke twelue prynceꝝ
drewe wit þaire bresteꝝ fra Babiloyne till Alexander. Tholo-
meus went alway bi-fore þe chayere wepande & sayande one þis 16
wyse: 'Full waa es me, My lord Alexander, waa es me. For in
all thi lyfe slew þou neuer so many meñ as þou dose nowe after
þi dede.' All Alexanders knyghtis also weped & made grete
dole & sayde oñ þis wyse: 'Waa es vs wreches! whatt schall wee 20
now do after þe dede of oure lorde Alexander? Whedir sall we
now gaa or whate partye may we now chese? Whare schall
we now get any helpe till oure lyfelade?' One þis wyse þay
went wepand after Alexander, till þay come till þe citee of 24
Alexander. And þare þay beryed hym in a tounbe þat was
rihte hie and wonder curyouslye wroghte. Þis tombe was all
of fyne golde sett full of precyous stanes, and oñ þat tounbe
þer was sett xxx ymages of golde wonder craftily made. 28

¹ Alexander was a mañ bot of a comouñ stature, wit a lange
nekke, Faire eghne & glad, his chekes ruddy, and all þe reme-
nant of his lymmes ware faire & semely & lyke vn-till a lorde.
He ouercome all meñ & neuer was ouercomeñ. The lenthe 32
of his lyffe was xxxij zere, twa & thritty zere & seuē monethes.
Fra þe twentyd zere of his birthe he gaffe hym to werre, and in
twelue zere he conquered all þe werlde, and made subiect un-till
hym alkyñ nacyonns. Seueñ monethes he ristede hym. He was 36
borne on þe vij kl of January, and dyed oñ þe vij kl of August.

¹ Large red capital A.

He byggit also in his lyfe xij grete citeez þat liden-to-wardes bene enhabyt, and þis are þaire names. Firste *Alexander* þat es called *ypryslicas*, þe secund *Alexander* es called *Bepyporum*,
4 þe thrid *Alexander* es callede *Sithia*, þe ferthe *Alexander* es called *Bicontristi*, þe fifte *Alexander* es called *þerauctoñ*, þe sext *Alexander* es called *Buctiphaloñ*, þe seuent es called vnder þe ryuer of Tygre, þe aghtend *New Babiloyne*, þe nyend *Aptreadañ*,
8 þe tend *Messagetes*, þe elleuend *Ypsyacoñ*, þe twelfed es called *Egipt*.

The twelve great cities that he built.

Explicit vita Alexandry magni conquestoris.

Here endeþ þe lyf of gret *Alexander conquerour* of all þe
12 worlde.

Early English Text Society.

LONDON :

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,

BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD..

BROADWAY HOUSE, LUDGATE HILL, E.C

AND BY HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS,

AMEN CORNER, E.C., AND IN NEW YORK.

Early English Text Society.

Committee of Management :

Director: PROF. I. GOLLANCZ, LITT.D.; KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON, W.C.

Assistant Director: JOHN MUNRO, Esq.

Treasurer: HENRY B. WHEATLEY. Esq.

Hon. Sec.: W. A. DALZIEL. Esq., 67, VICTORIA ROAD, FINSBURY PARK, N.

Hon. Secs. for America: { North & East: Prof. G. L. KITTREDGE, Harvard Coll., Cambr., Mass.
South & West: Prof. J. W. BRIGHT, Johns Hopkins Univ., Baltimore.

HENRY BRADLEY, M.A., PH.D.

PROF. NAPIER, PH.D.

REV. DR. ANDREW CLARK, M.A.

ALFRED W. POLLARD, M.A.

PROF. W. P. KER, LL.D.

PROF. J. SCHICK, PH.D.

SIR SIDNEY L. LEE, LITT.D.

ROBERT STEELE, Esq.

HENRY LITTLEHALES, Esq.

SIR GEORGE F. WARNER.

SIR J. A. H. MURRAY, LITT.D.

DR. W. ALDIS WRIGHT.

(With power to add Workers to their number.)

Bankers :

THE UNION OF LONDON AND SMITHS BANK, 2, PRINCES STREET, E.C.

THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY was started by the late DR. FURNIVALL in 1864 for the purpose of bringing the mass of Old English Literature within the reach of the ordinary student, and of wiping away the reproach under which England had long rested, of having felt little interest in the monuments of her early language and life.

On the starting of the Society, so many Texts of importance were at once taken in hand by its Editors, that it became necessary in 1867 to open, besides the *Original Series* with which the Society began, an *Extra Series* which should be mainly devoted to fresh editions of all that is most valuable in printed MSS. and Caxton's and other black-letter books, though first editions of MSS. will not be excluded when the convenience of issuing them demands their inclusion in the Extra Series.

During the forty-eight years of the Society's existence, it has produced, with whatever shortcomings, and at a cost of over £30,000, an amount of good solid work for which all students of our Language, and some of our Literature, must be grateful, and which has rendered possible the beginnings (at least) of proper Histories and Dictionaries of that Language and Literature, and has illustrated the thoughts, the life, the manners and customs of our forefathers and foremothers.

But the Society's experience has shown the very small number of those inheritors of the speech of Cynewulf, Chaucer, and Shakspeare, who care two guineas a year for the records of that speech. 'Let the dead past bury its dead' is still the cry of Great Britain and her Colonies, and of America, in the matter of language. The Society has never had money enough to produce the Texts that could easily have been got ready for it; and many Editors are now anxious to send to press the work they have prepared. The necessity has therefore arisen for trying to increase the number of the Society's members, and to induce its well-wishers to help it by gifts of money, either in one sum or by instalments. The Committee trust that every Member will bring before his or her friends and acquaintances the Society's claims for liberal support. Until all Early English MSS. are printed, no proper History of our Language or Social Life is possible.

The Subscription to the Society, which constitutes membership, is £1 1s. a year for the ORIGINAL SERIES, and £1 1s. for the EXTRA SERIES, due in advance on the 1st of JANUARY, and should be paid by Cheque, Postal Order, or Money-Order. cross 'Union of London and Smiths Bank,' to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 67, Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London. N. Members who want their Texts posted to them must add to their prepaid Subscriptions 1s. for the Original Series, and 1s. for the Extra Series, yearly. The Society's Texts are also sold separately at the prices put after them in the Lists; but Members can get back-Texts at one-third less than the List-prices by sending the cash for them in advance to the Hon. Secretary.

☞ The Society intends to complete, as soon as its funds will allow, the Reprints of its out-of-print Texts of the year 1866, and also of nos. 20, 26, and 33. Dr. Otto Glanning has undertaken *Seinte Marherde*; and *Itali Meidenhad* is in type. As the cost of these Reprints, if they were not needed, would have been devoted to fresh Texts, the Reprints will be sent to all Members in lieu of such Texts. Though called 'Reprints,' these books are new editions, generally with valuable additions, a fact not noticed by a few careless receivers of them, who have complained that they already had the volumes.

A gratifying gift is to be made to the Society. The American owner of the unique MS. of the Works of John Metham—whose Romance of Amoryus and Cleopas was sketched by Dr. Furnivall in his new edition of *Political, Religious and Love Poems*, No. 15 in the Society's Original Series—has promised to give the Society an edition of his MS. prepared by Dr. Hardin Craig of Princeton, and it will be issued next year as No. 132 of the Original Series. The giver hopes that his example may be followed by other folk, as the support hitherto given to the Society is so far below that which it deserves.

The Original Series Texts for 1910 were No. 139, *John Arderne's Treatises on Fistula in Ano*, &c., edited by D'Arcy Power, M.D., englished about 1425 from the Latin of about 1380 A.D.; No. 140, *Capgrave's Lives of St. Augustine and St. Gilbert of Sempringham*, A.D. 1451, edited by John Munro.

The Original Series Texts for 1911 were, No. 141, *Earth upon Earth*, all the known texts, edited by Miss Hilda Murray, M.A.; No. 142, *The English Register of Godstow Nunnery*, Part III, containing Forewords, Grammar Notes and Indexes, edited by Dr. Andrew Clark; and No. 143, *The Wars of Alexander*, edited from the Thornton MS. by J. S. Westlake, M.A. (still at press).

The Original Series Texts for 1912 were, No. 144, *The English Register of Oseney Abbey, by Oxford*, Part II, containing Forewords, Grammar, Notes and Indexes, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark, and No. 145, *The Northern Passion*, Part I, containing the four parallel texts of the poem, with variants from other manuscripts, edited by Miss Frances A. Foster.

Mr. John Munro has at press a revised and enlarged edition of Original Series, No. 26, the shorter pieces from the Thornton Manuscript, originally edited by the Rev. G. G. Perry, and this will be sent out to all subscribers to the Original Series for 1913. A revised edition of Dr. MacCracken's *Minor Poems of Lydgate*, Part I, will be issued to subscribers of 1910.

The Texts for future years will be chosen from Part III of *The Brut*; Part III of the *Alphabet of Tales*, edited by Mrs. M. M. Banks; Part II of Mr. A. O. Belfour's *Twelfth Century Homilies*; and Part IV of Miss Dormer Harris's *Coventry Leet Book*. Later Texts will be Part III of Robert of Brunne's *Handlyng Synne*, with a Glossary of Wm. of Waddington's French words in his *Manuel des Pechiez*, and comments on them, by Mr. Dickson Brown; Part II of the *Exeter Book*—Anglo-Saxon Poems from the unique MS. in Exeter Cathedral—re-edited by Professor Gollancz; Part II of Prof. Dr. Holtzhausen's *Vices and Virtues*; Part II of *Jacob's Well*, edited by Dr. Brandeis; the Alliterative *Siege of Jerusalem*, edited by the late Prof. Dr. E. Kölbing and Prof. Dr. Kaluza; an Introduction and Glossary to the *Minor Poems of the Vernon MS.* by H. Hartley, M.A.; Alain Chartier's *Quadriologue*, edited from the unique MS. Univ. Coll. Oxford No. 85, by Prof. J. W. H. Atkins; and the *Early Verse and Prose* in the Harleian MS. 2253, re-edited by Miss Hilda Murray. Canon Wordsworth of Marlborough having given the Society a copy of the *Leofric Canonical Rule*, Latin and Anglo-Saxon, Parker MS. 191, C. C. Cambridge, Prof. Napier will edit it, with a fragment of the englished *Capitula* of Bp. Theodulf: it is now at press.

The Extra Series Texts for 1910 were No. CVI, *Lydgate's Troy Book*, Part III, containing Books IV and V, completing the text, edited by Hy. Bergen, Ph.D.; and No. CVII, *Lydgate's Minor Poems*, Part I, *Religious Poems*, with the Lydgate Canon, edited by H. N. MacCracken, Ph.D.

The Extra Series Texts for 1911 were, No. CVIII, *Lydgate's Siege of Thebes*, Part I, the text, edited from the MSS. by Dr. A. Erdmann; and No. CIX, *Partouope*, Part I, edited from its 3 MSS. by Dr. A. T. Bödtker.

The Extra Series Texts for 1912 were, No. CX, *Caston's Mirror of the World*, edited with reproductions of all the woodcuts, by Dr. O. H. Prior, M.A., and No. CXI, *Caston's History of Jason*, Part I, the text, edited by Mr. John Munro (both at press).

Future Extra Series Texts will be Lydgate's *Minor Poems*, Part II, *Secular Poems*, ed. by Dr. H. N. MacCracken; *Lydgate's Troy Book*, Part IV, edited by Dr. Hy. Bergen; *De Medicina*, re-edited by Prof. Delcourt; *Lovelich's Romance of Merlin*, re-edited by Prof. Dr. A. Kock, Part II; Miss Eleanor Plummer's re-edition of *Sir Gouther and Sir Percyvalle*; Miss K. B. Lockock's re-edition of Hylton's *Ladder of Perfection*; Miss Warren's two-text

edition of *The Dance of Death* from the Ellesmere and other MS.; *The Owl and Nightingale*, two parallel Texts, edited by Mr. G. F. H. Sykes; Dr. Erbe's re-edition of *Mirk's Festival*, Part II; Dr. M. Konrath's re-edition of *William of Shoreham's Poems*, Part II; Professor Gollancz's re-edition of two Alliterative Poems, *Winner and Waster*, &c.; about 1360; Dr. Norman Moore's re-edition of *The Book of the Foundation of St. Bartholomew's Hospital, London*, from the unique MS. about 1425, which gives an account of the Founder, Rahere, and the miraculous cures wrought at the Hospital; *The Craft of Nonbrynye*, with other of the earliest enlight Treatises on Arithmetic, edited by R. Steele, B.A.; and the Second Part of the prose Romance of *Melusine*—Introduction, with ten facsimiles of the best woodblocks of the old foreign black-letter editions, Glossary, &c., by A. K. Donald, B.A.

Later Texts for the Extra Series will include *The Three Kings' Sons*, Part II, the Introduction, &c., by Prof. Dr. Leon Kellner; Part II of *The Chester Plays*, re-edited from the MSS., with a full collation of the formerly missing Devonshire MS., by Mr. G. England and Dr. Matthews; Prof. Jespersen's editions of John Hart's *Orthographie* (MS. 1551 A.D.; black-letter 1569), and *Method to teach Reading*, 1570; Deguilleville's *Pilgrimage of the Soule*, in English prose, edited by Mr. Hans Koestner. (For the three prose versions of *The Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*—two English, one French—an Editor is wanted.) Members are asked to realise the fact that the Society has now 50 years' work on its Lists,—at its present rate of production,—and that there is from 100 to 200 more years' work to come after that. The year 2000 will not see finished all the Texts that the Society ought to print. The need of more Members and money is pressing. Offers of help from willing Editors have continually to be declined because the Society has no funds to print their Texts.

Before his death in 1895, Mr. G. N. Currie was preparing an edition of the 15th and 16th century Prose Versions of Guillaume de Deguilleville's *Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*, with the French prose version by Jean Gallopes, from Lord Aldenham's MS., he having generously promised to pay the extra cost of printing the French text, and engraving one or two of the illuminations in his MS. But Mr. Currie, when on his deathbed, charged a friend to burn all his MSS. which lay in a corner of his room, and unluckily all the E. E. T. S.'s copies of the Deguilleville prose versions were with them, and were burnt with them, so that the Society will be put to the cost of fresh copies.

Guillaume de Deguilleville, monk of the Cistercian abbey of Chaalis, in the diocese of Senlis, wrote his first verse *Pèlerinage de l'Homme* in 1330-1 when he was 36.¹ Twenty-five (or six) years after, in 1355, he revised his poem, and issued a second version of it,² a revision of which was printed ab. 1500. Of the prose representative of the first version, 1330-1, a prose Englishing, about 1430 A.D., was edited by Mr. Aldis Wright for the Roxburghe Club in 1869, from MS. Ff. 5. 30 in the Cambridge University Library. Other copies of this prose English are in the Hunterian Museum, Glasgow, Q. 2. 25; Sion College, London; and the Laud Collection in the Bodleian, no. 740.³ A copy in the Northern dialect is MS. G. 21, in St. John's Coll., Cambridge, and this is the MS. which will be edited for the E. E. Text Society. The Laud MS. 740 was somewhat condensed and modernised, in the 17th century, into MS. Ff. 6. 30, in the Cambridge University Library;⁴ "The Pilgrime or the Pilgrimage of Man in this World," copied by Will. Baspoole, whose copy "was verbatim written by Walter Parker, 1645, and from thence transcribed by G. G. 1649; and from thence by W. A. 1655." This last copy may have been read by, or its story reported to, Bunyan, and may have been the groundwork of his *Pilgrim's Progress*. It will be edited for the E. E. T. Soc., its text running under the earlier English, as in Mr. Hertridge's edition of the *Gesta Romanorum* for the Society. In February 1464,⁵ Jean Gallopes—a clerk of Angers, afterwards chaplain to John, Duke of Bedford, Regent of France—turned Deguilleville's first verse *Pèlerinage* into a prose *Pèlerinage de la vie humaine*.⁶ By the kindness of Lord Aldenham, as above mentioned, Gallopes's French text will be printed opposite the early prose northern Englishing in the Society's edition.

The Second Version of Deguilleville's *Pèlerinage de l'Homme*, A.D. 1355 or -6, was enlight in verse by Lydgate in 1426, and, thanks to the diligence of the old Elizabethan tailor and manuscript-lover, John Stowe, a complete text of Lydgate's poem has been edited for the Society by Dr. Furnivall. The British Museum French MSS. (Harleian 4399,⁷ and Additional 22,937⁸ and 25,594⁹) are all of the First Version.

¹ He was born about 1295. See Abbé GOUJET'S *Bibliothèque française*, Vol. IX, p. 73-4.—P. M. The Roxburghe Club printed the 1st version in 1893.

² The Roxburghe Club's copy of this 2nd version was lent to Mr. Currie, and unluckily burnt too with his other MSS.

³ These 3 MSS. have not yet been collated, but are believed to be all of the same version.

⁴ Another MS. is in the Pepys Library.

⁵ According to Lord Aldenham's MS.

⁶ These were printed in France, late in the 15th or early in the 16th century.

⁷ 15th cent., containing only the *Vie humaine*.

⁸ 15th cent., containing all the 3 Pilgrimages, the 3rd being Jesus Christ's.

⁹ 14th cent., containing the *Vie humaine* and the 2nd Pilgrimage, *de l'Âme*: both incomplete.

Besides his first *Pelerinage de l'homme* in its two versions, Deguilleville wrote a second, "de l'ame separee du corps," and a third, "de nostre seigneur Iesus." Of the second, a prose Englishing of 1413, *The Pilgrimage of the Soule* (with poems, by Hoccleve, already printed for the Society with that author's *Regement of Princes*), exists in the Egerton MS. 615,¹ at Hatfield, Cambridge (Univ. Kk. 1. 7, and Caius), Oxford (Univ. Coll. and Corpus), and in Caxton's edition of 1483. This version has 'somewhat of additions' as Caxton says, and some shortenings too, as the maker of both, the first translator, tells us in the MSS. Caxton leaves out the earlier Englisher's interesting Epilogue in the Egerton MS. This prose Englishing of the *Soule* has been copied and will be edited for the Society by Mr. Hans Koestner. Of the *Pilgrimage of Jesus*, no Englishing is known.

Members are reminded that *fresh Subscribers are always wanted*, and that the Committee can at any time, on short notice, send to press an additional Thousand Pounds' worth of work.

The Subscribers to the Original Series must be prepared for the issue of the whole of the Early English *Lives of Saints*, sooner or later. The Standard Collection of Saints' Lives in the Corpus and Ashmole MSS., the Harleian MS. 2277, &c. will repeat the Laud set, our No. 87, with additions, and in right order. (The foundation MS. (Laud 108) had to be printed first, to prevent quite unwieldy collations.) The Supplementary Lives from the Vernon and other MSS. will form one or two separate volumes.

Besides the Saints' Lives, Trevisa's Englishing of *Bartholomaeus de Proprietatibus Rerum*, the mediæval Cyclopædia of Science, &c., will be the Society's next big undertaking. Prof. Napier of Oxford, wishing to have the whole of our MS. Anglo-Saxon in type, and accessible to students, will edit for the Society all the unprinted and other Anglo-Saxon Homilies which are not included in Thorpe's edition of Ælfrie's prose,² Dr. Morris's of the Blickling Homilies, and Prof. Skeat's of Ælfrie's Metrical Homilies. The late Prof. Kölbng left complete his text, for the Society, of the *Anceren Rivle*, from the best MS., with collations of the other four, and this will be edited for the Society by Dr. Thümmler. Mr. Harvey means to prepare an edition of the three MSS. of the *Earliest English Metrical Psalter*, one of which was edited by the late Mr. Stevenson for the Surtees Society.

Members of the Society will learn with pleasure that its example has been followed, not only by the Old French Text Society, which has done such admirable work under its founders Profs. Paul Meyer and Gaston Paris, but also by the Early Russian Text Society, which was set on foot in 1877, and has since issued many excellent editions of old MS. Chronicles, &c.

Members will also note with pleasure the annexation of large tracts of our Early English territory by the important German contingent, the late Professors Zupitza and Kölbng, the living Hausknecht, Eienkel, Haenisch, Kaluza, Hupe, Adam, Holthausen, Schick, Herzfeld, Brandeis, Sieper, Konrath, Wülfing, &c. Scandinavia has also sent us Prof. Erdmann and Dr. E. A. Kock; Holland, Prof. H. Logeman, who is now working in Belgium; France, Prof. Paul Meyer—with Gaston Paris as adviser (alas, now dead);—Italy, Prof. Lattanzi; Austria, Dr. von Fleischhacker; while America is represented by the late Prof. Child, by Dr. Mary Noyes Colvin, Miss Rickert, Profs. Mead, McKnight, Triggs, Hulme, Bryce, Craig, Drs. Bergen, MacCracken, &c. The sympathy, the ready help, which the Society's work has cald forth from the Continent and the United States, have been among the pleasantest experiences of the Society's life, a real aid and cheer amid all troubles and discouragements. All our Members are grateful for it, and recognise that the bond their work has woven between them and the lovers of language and antiquity across the seas is one of the most welcome results of the Society's efforts.

ORIGINAL SERIES. (One guinea each year.)

- | | | |
|---|---------|------|
| 1. Early English Alliterative Poems, ab. 1360 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. | 16s. | 1864 |
| 2. Arthur, ab. 1440, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. | 4s. | " |
| 3. Lauder on the Dewtie of Kyngis, &c., 1556, ed. F. Hall, D.C.L. | 4s. | " |
| 4. Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, ab. 1360, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. | 10s. | " |
| 5. Hume's Orthographie and Congruite of the Britan Tongue, ab. 1617, ed. H. B. Wheatley. | 4s. | 1865 |
| 6. Lancelot of the Laik, ab. 1500, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. | 8s. | " |
| 7. Genesis & Exodus, ab. 1250, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. | 8s. | " |
| 8. Morte Arthure, ab. 1440, ed. E. Broek. | 7s. | " |
| 9. Thynne on Speght's ed. of Chaucer, A.D. 1599, ed. Dr. G. Kingsley and Dr. F. J. Furnivall. | 10s. | " |
| 10. Merlin, ab. 1440, Part I., ed. H. B. Wheatley. | 2s. 6d. | " |
| 11. Lyndesay's Monarche, &c., 1552, Part I., ed. J. Small, M.A. | 3s. | " |

¹ Ab. 1430, 106 leaves (leaf 1 of text wanting), with illuminations of nice little devils—red, green, tawny, &c.—and damnd souls, fires, angels, &c.

² Of these, Mr. Harsley is preparing a new edition, with collations of all the MSS. Many copies of Thorpe's book, not issued by the Ælfrie Society, are still in stock.

Of the Verelli Homilies, the Society has bought the copy made by Prof. G. Lattanzi,

12. Wright's Chaste Wife, ab. 1462, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 1s. 1865
13. Sainte Marherete, 1200-1330, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne: re-edited by Dr. Otto Glauning. [Out of print. 1866
14. Kyng Horn, Floris and Blancheffour, &c., ed. Rev. J. R. Lumby, D.D., re-ed. Dr. G. H. McKnight. 5s. "
15. Political, Religious, and Love Poems, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 7s. 6d. "
16. The Book of Quinte Essence, ab. 1460-70, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 1s. "
17. Parallel Extracts from 45 MSS. of Piers the Plowman, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 1s. "
18. Hali Meidenhad, ab. 1200, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne, re-edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. [At Press. "
19. Lyndesay's Monarchie, &c., Part II., ed. J. Small, M.A. 3s. 6d. "
20. Richard Rolle de Hampole, English Prose Treatises of, ed. Rev. G. G. Perry. 1s. [At Press. "
21. Merlin, Part II., ed. H. B. Wheatley. 4s. "
22. Partenay or Lusignen, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s. "
23. Dan Michel's Ayenbite of Inwyrt, 1340, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. 6d. "
24. Hymns to the Virgin and Christ; the Parliament of Devils, &c., ab. 1430, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 3s. 1867
25. The Stacions of Rome, the Pilgrims' Sea-voyage, with Cleue Maydenhod, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 1s. "
26. Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse, from R. Thornton's MS., ed. Rev. G. G. Perry. 2s. [At Press. "
27. Levins's Manipulus Vocabulorum, a ryming Dictionary, 1570, ed. H. B. Wheatley. 12s. "
28. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, 1362 A.D.; Text A, Part I., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s. "
29. Old English Homilies (ab. 1220-30 A.D.). Series I, Part I. Edited by Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 7s. "
30. Pierce the Ploughmans Crede, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 2s. "
31. Myrc's Duties of a Parish Priest, in Verse, ab. 1420 A.D., ed. E. Peacock. 4s. 1868
32. Early English Meals and Manners: the Boke of Nourture of John Russell, the Bokes of Keruyng, Curtasye, and Demeanor, the Babees Book, Urbanitatis, &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall. 12s. "
33. The Knight de la Tour Landry, ab. 1440 A.D. A Book for Daughters, ed. T. Wright, M.A. [Reprinting. "
34. Old English Homilies (before 1300 A.D.). Series I, Part II., ed. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s. "
35. Lyndesay's Works, Part III.: The Historie and Testament of Squyer Meldrum, ed. F. Hall. 2s. "
36. Merlin, Part III. Ed. H. B. Wheatley. On Arthurian Localities, by J. S. Stuart Glennie. 12s: 1869
37. Sir David Lyndesay's Works, Part IV., Ane Satyre of the Three Estaits. Ed. F. Hall, D.C.L. 4s. "
38. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, Part II. Text B. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10s. 6d. "
39. Alliterative Romance of the Destruction of Troy. Ed. D. Donaldson & G. A. Panton Pt. I. 10s. 6d. "
40. English Gilds, their Statutes and Customs, 1389 A.D. Edit. Toulmin Smith and Lucy T. Smith, with an Essay on Gilds and Trades-Unions, by Dr. L. Brentano. 21s. 1870
41. William Lauder's Minor Poems. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 3s. "
42. Bernardus De Cura Rei Familiaris, Early Scottish Prophecies, &c. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 2s. "
43. Ratis Raving, and other Moral and Religious Pieces. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 3s. "
44. The Alliterative Romance of Joseph of Arimathie, or The Holy Graill: from the Vernon MS.; with W. de Worde's and Pynson's Lives of Joseph: ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 5s. 1871
45. King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care, edited from 2 MSS., with an English translation, by Henry Sweet, Esq., B.A., Balliol College, Oxford. Part I. 10s. "
46. Legends of the Holy Rood, Symbols of the Passion and Cross Poems, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. "
47. Sir David Lyndesay's Works, Part V., ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 3s. "
48. The Times' Whistle, and other Poems, by R. C. 1616; ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s. "
49. An Old English Miscellany, containing a Bestiary, Kentish Sermons, Proverbs of Alfred, and Religious Poems of the 13th cent., ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 10s. 1872
50. King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. Part II. 10s. "
51. The Life of St Juliana, 2 versions, A.D. 1230, with translations; ed. T. O. Cockayne & E. Brock. 2s. "
52. Palladius on Husbandrie, englisht (ab. 1420 A.D.), ed. Rev. Barton Lodge, M.A. Part I. 10s. "
53. Old-English Homilies, Series II., and three Hymns to the Virgin and God, 13th-century, with the music to two of them, in old and modern notation; ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s. 1873
54. The Vision of Piers Plowman, Text C: Richard the Redeles (by William, the author of the Vision) and The Crowned King; Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 18s. "
55. Generydes, a Romance, ab. 1440 A.D., ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part I. 3s. "
56. The Gest Hystorialle of the Destruction of Troy, in alliterative verse; ed. by D. Donaldson, Esq., and the late Rev. G. A. Panton. Part II. 10s. 6d. 1874
57. The Early English Version of the "Cursor Mundi"; in four Texts, edited by the Rev. R. Morris, M.A., LL.D. Part I, with 2 photolithographic facsimiles. 10s. 6d. "
58. The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. Part I. 8s. "
59. The "Cursor Mundi" in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris Part II. 15s. 1875
60. Meditacyons on the Soper of our Lorde (by Robert of Brunne), edited by J. M. Cowper. 2s. 6d. "
61. The Romance and Prophecies of Thomas of Erceuldoune, from 5 MSS.; ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 10s. 6d. "
62. The "Cursor Mundi," in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 15s. 1876
63. The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 7s. "
64. Francis Thynne's Embleames and Epigrams, A.D. 1600, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 7s. "
65. Be Domes Dæge (Bede's De Die Judicii), &c., ed. J. R. Lumby, B.D. 2s. "
66. The "Cursor Mundi," in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part IV., with 2 autotypes. 10s. 1877
67. Notes on Piers Plowman, by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. Part I. 21s. "
68. The "Cursor Mundi," in 4 Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part V. 25s. 1878
69. Adam Davie's 5 Dreams about Edward II., &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 5s. "
70. Generydes, a Romance, ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part II. 4s. "
71. The Lay Folks Mass-Book, four texts, ed. Rev. Canon Simmons. 25s. 1879

72. Palladius on Husbandrie, english (ab. 1420 A.D.). Part II. Ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A. 15s. 1879
73. The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 10s. 1880
74. English Works of Wyclif, hitherto unprinted, ed. F. D. Matthew, Esq. 20s. "
75. *Catholicon Anglicum*, an early English Dictionary, from Lord Monson's MS. A.D. 1482, ed., with Introduction & Notes, by S. J. Herrtage, B.A.; and with a Preface by H. B. Wheatley. 20s. 1881
76. Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, in MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A. Part I. 10s. "
77. Beowulf, the unique MS. autotyped and transliterated, edited by Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D. 25s. 1882
78. The Fifty Earliest English Wills, in the Court of Probate, 1387-1439, ed. by F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 7s. "
79. King Alfred's Orosius, from Lord Tollenache's 9th century MS., Part I, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 13s. 1883
- 79*b*. *Extra Volume*. Facsimile of the Epinal Glossary, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 15s. "
80. The Early-English Life of St. Katherine and its Latin Original, ed. Dr. Einenkell. 12s. 1884
81. Piers Plowman: Notes, Glossary, &c. Part IV, completing the work, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A. 18s. "
82. Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A., LL.D. Part II. 12s. 1885
83. The Oldest English Texts, Charters, &c., ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 20s. "
84. Additional Analogs to 'The Wright's Chaste Wife,' No. 12, by W. A. Clouston. 1s. 1886
85. The Three Kings of Cologne. 2 English Texts, and 1 Latin, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 17s. "
86. Prose Lives of Women Saints, ab. 1610 A.D., ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. C. Horstmann. 12s. "
87. Early English Verse Lives of Saints (earliest version), Laud MS. 108, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20s. 1887
88. Hy. Bradshaw's Life of St. Werburge (Tynson, 1521), ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 10s. "
89. Vices and Virtues, from the unique MS., ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Dr. F. Holthausen. Part I. 8s. 1888
90. Anglo-Saxon and Latin Rule of St. Benet, interlinear Glosses, ed. Dr. H. Logeman. 12s. "
91. Two Fifteenth-Century Cookery-Books, ab. 1430-1450, edited by Mr. T. Austin. 10s. "
92. Eadwine's Canterbury Psalter, from the Trin. Camb. MS., ab. 1150 A.D., ed. F. Harsley, B.A. Pt. I. 12s. 1889
93. Defensor's Liber Scintillarum, edited from the MSS. by Ernest Rhodes, B.A. 12s. "
94. Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7, Part III, ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 15s. 1890
95. The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, re-ed. by Dr. Thomas Miller. Part I, § 1. 18s. "
96. The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, re-ed. by Dr. Thomas Miller. Pt. 1, § 2. 15s. 181
97. The Earliest English Prose Psalter, edited from its 2 MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring. Part I. 15s. "
98. Minor Poems of the Vernon MS., Part I., ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20s. 1892
99. Cursor Mundi. Part VI. Preface, Notes, and Glossary, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. "
100. Capgrave's Life of St. Katharine, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann, with Forewords by Dr. Furnivall. 20s. 1893
101. Cursor Mundi. Part VII. Essay on the MSS., their Dialects, &c., by Dr. H. Hupe. 10s. "
102. Lanfranc's Chirurgie, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhaecker. Part I. 20s. 1894
103. The Legend of the Cross, from a 12th century MS., &c., ed. Prof. A. S. Napier, M.A., Ph.D. 7s. 6d. "
104. The Exeter Book (Anglo-Saxon Poems), re-edited from the unique MS. by I. Gollancz, M.A. Part I. 20s. 1895
105. The Prymer or Lay-Folks' Prayer-Book, Camb. Univ. MS., ab. 1420, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part I. 10s. "
106. R. Misyng's Fire of Love and Mending of Life (Hampele), 1434, 1435, ed. Rev. R. Harvey, M.A. 15s. 1896
107. The English Conquest of Ireland, A.D. 1166-1185, 2 Texts, 1425, 1440, Pt. I, ed. Dr. Furnivall. 15s. "
108. Child-Marriages and -Divorees, Trothplights, &c. Chester Depositions, 1561-6, ed. Dr. Furnivall. 15s. 1897
109. The Prymer or Lay-Folks' Prayer-Book, ab. 1420, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part II. 10s. "
110. The Old-English Version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, ed. Dr. T. Miller. Part II, § 1. 15s. 1898
111. The Old-English Version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, ed. Dr. T. Miller. Part II, § 2. 15s. "
112. Merlin, Part IV: Outlines of the Legend of Merlin, by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D. 15s. 1899
113. Queen Elizabeth's Englishings of Boethius, Plutarch &c. &c., ed. Miss C. Pemberton. 15s. "
114. Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints. Part IV and last, ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 10s. 1900
115. Jacob's Well, edited from the unique Salisbury Cathedral MS. by Dr. A. Brandeis. Part I. 10s. "
116. An Old-English Martyrology, re-edited by Dr. G. Herzfeld. 10s. "
117. Minor Poems of the Vernon MS., edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Part II. 15s. 1901
118. The Lay Folks' Catechism, ed. by Canon Simmons and Rev. H. E. Nolloth, M.A. 5s. "
119. Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne (1303), and its French original, re-ed. by Dr. Furnivall. Pt. I. 10s. "
120. The Rule of St. Benet, in Northern Prose and Verse, & Caxton's Summary, ed. Dr. E. A. Kock. 15s. 1902
121. The Laud MS. Troy-Book, ed. from the unique Laud MS. 595, by Dr. J. E. Wülfing. Part I. 15s. "
122. The Laud MS. Troy-Book, ed. from the unique Laud MS. 595, by Dr. J. E. Wülfing. Part II. 20s. 1903
123. Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne (1303), and its French original, re-ed. by Dr. Furnivall. Pt. II. 10s. "
124. Twenty-six Political and other Poems from Digby MS. 102 &c., ed. by Dr. J. Kail. Part I. 10s. 1904
125. Medieval Records of a London City Church, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part I. 10s. "
126. An Alphabet of Tales, in Northern English, from the Latin, ed. Mrs. M. M. Banks. Part I. 10s. "
127. An Alphabet of Tales, in Northern English, from the Latin, ed. Mrs. M. M. Banks. Part II. 10s. 1905
128. Medieval Records of a London City Church, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part II. 10s. "
129. The English Register of Godstow Nunnery, ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Pt. I. 19s. "
130. The English Register of Godstow Nunnery, ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. Dr. A. Clark. Pt. II. 15s. 1906
131. The Brut, or The Chronicle of England, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. F. Brie. Part I. 10s. "
132. John Metham's Works, edited from the unique MS. by Dr. Hardin Craig. [At Press. "
133. The English Register of Oseney Abbey, by Oxford, ed. by the Rev. Dr. A. Clark. Part I. 15s. 1907
134. The Coventry Leet Book, edited from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dormer Harris. Part I. 15s. "
135. The Coventry Leet Book, edited from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dormer Harris. Part II. 15s. 1908
- 135*b*. *Extra Issue*. Prof. Manly's Piers Plowman & its Sequence, urging the fivefold authorship of the *Vision*.
136. The Brut, or The Chronicle of England, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. F. Brie. Part II. 15s. "

137. Twelfth-Century Homilies in MS. Bodley 343, ed. by Prof. A. O. Belfour, M.A. Part I, the Text. 15s. 1909
 138. The Coventry Leet Book, edited from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dormer Harris. Part III. 15s. "
 139. John Arderne's Treatises on Fistula in Ano, &c., ed. by D'Arcy Power, M.D. 15s. 1910
 139 *b, c, d, e, Extra Issue.* The Piers Plowman Controversy: *b.* Dr. Jusserand's 1st Reply to Prof. Manly; *c.* Prof. Manly's Answer to Dr. Jusserand; *d.* Dr. Jusserand's 2nd Reply to Prof. Manly; *e.* Mr. R. W. Chambers's Article; *f.* Dr. Henry Bradley's Rejoinder to Mr. R. W. Chambers (issued separately). 10s. "
 140. Capgrave's Lives of St. Augustine and St. Gilbert of Sempringham, A.D. 1451, ed. by J. J. Munro. 10s. "
 141. Earth upon Earth, all the known texts, ed., with an Introduction, by Miss Hilda Murray, M.A. 10s. 1911
 142. The English Register of Godstow Nunery, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part III. 10s. "
 143. The Wars of Alexander the Great, Thornton MS., ed. J. S. Westlake, M.A. [*At Press.*] 10s. "
 144. The English Register of Cseney Abbey, by Oxford, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part II. 10s. 1912
 145. The Northern Passion, ed. by Miss F. A. Foster. Part I, the four parallel texts. 15s. "
 146. The Coventry Leet Book, ed. Miss M. Dormer Harris. Introduction, Indexes, etc. Part IV. [*At Press.*] 1913
 147. The Northern Passion, ed. Miss F. A. Foster, Introduction, French Text, Variants and Fragments, Glossary. Part II. [*At Press.*] "

EXTRA SERIES. (*One guinea each year.*)

The Publications for 1867-1910 (one guinea each year) are:—

- I. William of Palerne; or, William and the Werwolf. Re-edited by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 13s. 1867
 II. Early English Pronunciation with especial Reference to Shakspeare and Chaucer, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part I. 10s. "
 III. Caxton's Book of Curtesye, in Three Versions. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 5s. 1868
 IV. Havelok the Dane. Re-edited by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10s. "
 V. Chaucer's Boethius. Edited from the two best MSS. by Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 12s. "
 VI. Chevelere Assigne. Re-edited from the unique MS. by Lord Aldenham, M.A. 3s. "
 VII. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part II. 10s. 1869
 VIII. Queene Elizabethes Achademy, &c. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. Essays on early Italian and German Books of Courtesy, by W. M. Rossetti and Dr. E. Oswald. 13s. "
 IX. Awdley's Fraternitey of Vacabondes, Harman's Caveat, &c. Ed. E. Viles & F. J. Furnivall. 5s. "
 X. Andrew Boorde's Introduction of Knowledge, 1547, Dyetary of Helth, 1542, Barnes in Defence of the Berde, 1542-3. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 18s. 1870
 XI. Barbour's Bruce, Part I. Ed. from MSS. and editions, by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 12s. "
 XII. England in Henry VIII's Time: a Dialogue between Cardinal Pole & Lupset, by Thom. Starkey, Chaplain to Henry VIII. Ed. J. M. Cowper. Part II. 12s. (Part I. is No. XXXII, 1878, 8s.) 1871
 XIII. A Supplicacyon of the Beggars, by Simon Fish, 1528-9 A.D., ed. F. J. Furnivall; with A Supplication to our Moste Soueraigne Lorde; A Supplication of the Poore Commons; and The Decaye of England by the Great Multitude of Sheep, ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s. "
 XIV. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Part III. 10s. "
 XV. Robert Crowley's Thirty-One Epigrams, Voyce of the Last Trumpet, Way to Wealth, &c., A.D. 1550-1, edited by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 12s. 1872
 XVI. Chaucer's Treatise on the Astrolabe. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 6s. "
 XVII. The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D., with 4 Tracts (1542-48), ed. Dr. Murray. Part I. 10s. "
 XVIII. The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D., ed. Dr. Murray. Part II. 8s. 1873
 XIX. Oure Ladyes Myroure, A.D. 1530, ed. Rev. J. H. Blunt, M.A. 24s. "
 XX. Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail (ab. 1450 A.D.), ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part I. 8s. 1874
 XXI. Barbour's Bruce, Part II., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 4s. "
 XXII. Henry Brinklow's Complaynt of Roderick Mors (ab. 1542); and The Lamentacion of a Christian against the Citie of London, made by Roderigo Mors, A.D. 1545. Ed. J. M. Cowper. 9s. "
 XXIII. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part IV. 10s. "
 XXIV. Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part II. 10s. 1875
 XXV. Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I. 20s. "
 XXVI. Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part II. 14s. 1876
 XXVII. Bp. Fisher's English Works (died 1535), ed. by Prof. J. E. B. Mayor. Part I, the Text. 16s. "
 XXVIII. Lovelich's Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part III. 10s. 1877
 XXIX. Barbour's Bruce. Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 21s. "
 XXX. Lovelich's Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part IV. 15s. 1878
 XXXI. The Alliterative Romance of Alexander and Dindimus, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s. "
 XXXII. Starkey's "England in Henry VIII's time," Pt. I. Starkey's Life and Letters, ed. S. J. Herrtage. 8s. "
 XXXIII. Gesta Romanorum (englisht ab. 1440), ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A. 15s. 1879
 XXXIV. The Charlemagne Romances:—1. Sir Ferumbras, from Ashm. MS. 33, ed. S. J. Herrtage. 15s. "
 XXXV. Charlemagne Romances:—2. The Sege off Melayne, Sir Otuell, &c., ed. S. J. Herrtage. 12s. 1880
 XXXVI. Charlemagne Romances:—3. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. I., ed. S. J. Herrtage. 16s. "
 XXXVII. Charlemagne Romances:—4. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. II., ed. S. J. Herrtage. 15s. 1881
 XXXVIII. Charlemagne Romances:—5. The Sowdone of Babylone, ed. Dr. Hausknecht. 15s. "
 XXXIX. Charlemagne Romances:—6. Rauf Colyear, Roland, Otuel, &c., ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A. 15s. 1882
 XL. Charlemagne Romances:—7. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part I. 15s. "

- XLI. Charlemagne Romances:—8. *Huon of Burdeux*, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Pt. II. 15s. 1882
 XLII. *Guy of Warwick*: 2 texts (Auchinleck MS. and Caius MS.), ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I. 15s. " "
 XLIII. Charlemagne Romances:—9. *Huon of Burdeux*, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Pt. III. 15s. 1884
 XLIV. Charlemagne Romances:—10. *The Four Sons of Aymon*, ed. Miss Octavia Richardson. Pt. I. 15s. " "
 XLV. Charlemagne Romances:—11. *The Four Sons of Aymon*, ed. Miss O. Richardson. Pt. II. 20s. 1885
 XLVI. *Sir Bevis of Hamton*, from the Auchinleck and other MSS., ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part I. 10s. " "
 XLVII. *The Wars of Alexander*, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 20s. 1886
 XLVIII. *Sir Bevis of Hamton*, ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part II. 10s. " "
 XLIX. *Guy of Warwick*, 2 texts (Auchinleck and Caius MSS.), Pt. II., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D. 15s. 1887
 L. Charlemagne Romances:—12. *Huon of Burdeux*, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part IV. 5s. " "
 LI. *Torrent of Portyngale*, from the unique MS. in the Chetham Library, ed. E. Adam, Ph.D. 10s. " "
 LII. *Bullein's Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence, 1578* (ed. 1, 1564). Ed. M. & A. H. Bullen. 10s. 1888
 LIII. *Vicary's Anatomie of the Body of Man, 1548*, ed. 1577, ed. F. J. & Percy Furnivall. Part I. 15s. " "
 LIV. *Caxton's Englishing of Alain Chartier's Curial*, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall & Prof. P. Meyer. 5s. " "
 LV. *Barbour's Bruce*, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. Part IV. 5s. 1889
 LVI. *Early English Pronunciation*, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Pt. V., the present English Dialects. 25s. " "
 LVII. *Caxton's Eneydos, A.D. 1490*, coll. with its French, ed. M. T. Culley, M.A. & Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 13s. 1890
 LVIII. *Caxton's Blanchardyn & Eglantine, c. 1489*, extracts from ed. 1595, & French, ed. Dr. L. Kellner. 17s. " "
 LIX. *Guy of Warwick*, 2 texts (Auchinleck and Caius MSS.), Part III., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D. 15s. 1891
 LX. *Lydgate's Temple of Glass*, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. J. Schiek. 15s. " "
 LXI. *Hoccleve's Minor Poems, I*, from the Philipps and Durham MSS., ed. F. J. Furnivall, Ph.D. 15s. 1892
 LXII. *The Chester Plays*, re-edited from the MSS. by the late Dr. Hermann Deimling. Part I. 15s. " "
 LXIII. *Thomas a Kempis's De Imitatione Christi*, english ab. 1440, & 1502, ed. Prof. J. K. Ingram. 15s. 1893
 LXIV. *Caxton's Godfrey of Bolyne, or Last Siege of Jerusalem, 1481*, ed. Dr. Mary N. Colvin. 15s. " "
 LXV. *Sir Bevis of Hamton*, ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part III. 15s. 1894
 LXVI. *Lydgate's and Burgh's Secrees of Philofoffres, ab. 1445—50*, ed. R. Steele, B.A. 15s. " "
 LXVII. *The Three Kings' Sons, a Romance, ab. 1500*, Part I., the Text, ed. Dr. Furnivall. 10s. 1895
 LXVIII. *Melusine, the prose Romance, ab. 1500*, Part I., the Text, ed. A. K. Donald. 20s. " "
 LXIX. *Lydgate's Assembly of the Gods*, ed. Prof. Oscar L. Triggs, M.A., Ph.D. 15s. 1896
 LXX. *The Digby Plays*, edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 15s. " "
 LXXI. *The Towneley Plays*, ed. Geo. England and A. W. Pollard, M.A. 15s. 1897
 LXXII. *Hoccleve's Regement of Princes, 1411-12, and 14 Poems*, edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 15s. " "
 LXXIII. *Hoccleve's Minor Poems, II*, from the Ashburnham MS., ed. I. Gollancz, M.A. [*At Press*]. " "
 LXXIV. *Secreta Secretorum, 3 prose Englishings*, by Jas. Yonge, 1428, ed. R. Steele, B.A. Part I. 20s. 1898
 LXXV. *Speculum Guidonis de Warwyk*, edited by Miss G. L. Morrill, M.A., Ph.D. 10s. " "
 LXXVI. *George Ashby's Poems, &c.*, ed. Miss Mary Bateson. 15s. 1899
 LXXVII. *Lydgate's DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, 1426*, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Part I. 10s. " "
 LXXVIII. *The Life and Death of Mary Magdalene*, by T. Robinson, c. 1620, ed. Dr. H. O. Sommer. 5s. " "
 LXXIX. *Caxton's Dialogues, English and French, c. 1488*, ed. Henry Bradley, M.A. 10s. 1900
 LXXX. *Lydgate's Two Nightingale Poems*, ed. Dr. Otto Glanung. 5s. " "
 LXXXI. *Gower's Confessio Amantis*, edited by G. C. Macaulay, M.A. Vol. I. 15s. " "
 LXXXII. *Gower's Confessio Amantis*, edited by G. C. Macaulay, M.A. Vol. II. 15s. 1901
 LXXXIII. *Lydgate's DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, 1426*, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Pt. II. 10s. " "
 LXXXIV. *Lydgate's Reason and Sensuality*, edited by Dr. E. Sieper. Part I. 5s. " "
 LXXXV. *Alexander Scott's Poems, 1568*, from the unique Edinburgh MS., ed. A. K. Donald, B.A. 10s. 1902
 LXXXVI. *William of Shoreham's Poems*, re-ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. M. Konrath. Part I. 10s. " "
 LXXXVII. *Two Coventry Corpus-Christi Plays*, re-edited by Hardin Craig, M.A. 10s. " "
 LXXXVIII. *Le Morte Arthur*, re-edited from the Harleian MS. 2252 by Prof. Bruce, Ph.D. 15s. 1903
 LXXXIX. *Lydgate's Reason and Sensuality*, edited by Dr. E. Sieper. Part II. 15s. " "
 XC. *English Fragments from Latin Medieval Service-Books*, ed. by Hy. Littlehales. 5s. " "
 XCI. *The Macro Plays*, from Mr. Gurney's unique MS., ed. Dr. Furnivall and A. W. Pollard, M.A. 10s. 1904
 XCII. *Lydgate's DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, Part III.*, ed. Miss Loebeck. 10s. " "
 XCIII. *Lovelich's Romance of Merlin*, from the unique MS., ed. Dr. E. A. Kock. Part I. 10s. " "
 XCIV. *Respublica, a Play on Social England, A.D. 1553*, ed. L. A. Maguans, LL.B. 12s. 1905
 XCV. *Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail, Pt. V.: The Legend of the Holy Grail*, by Dorothy Kempe. 6s. " "
 XCVI. *Mirk's Festial*, edited from the MSS. by Dr. Erbe. Part I. 12s. " "
 XCVII. *Lydgate's Troy Book*, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Hy. Bergen. Part I, Books I and II. 15s. 1906
 XCVIII. *Skelton's Magnyfyence*, edited by Dr. R. L. Ramsay, with an Introduction. 7s. 6d. " "
 XCIX. *The Romance of Emaré*, re-edited from the MS. by Miss Edith Rickert, Ph.D. 7s. 6d. " "
 C. *The Harrowing of Hell and The Gospel of Nicodemus*, re-ed. by Prof. Hulme, M.A., Ph.D. 15s. 1907
 CI. *Songs, Carols, &c.*, from Richard Hill's Balliol MS., edited by Dr. Roman Dyboski. 15s. " "
 CII. *Promptorium Parvulorum, the 1st English-Latin Dictionary*, ed. Rev. A. L. Mayhew, M.A. 21s. 1908
 CIII. *Lydgate's Troy Book*, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Hy. Bergen. Part II, Book III. 10s. " "
 CIV. *The Non-Cycle Mystery Plays*, re-edited by O. Waterhouse, M.A. 15s. 1909
 CV. *The Tale of Beryn, with the Pardoner and Tapster*, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall and W. G. Stone. 15s. " "
 CVI. *Lydgate's Troy Book*, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Hy. Bergen. Part III. 15s. 1910
 CVII. *Lydgate's Minor Poems*, edited by Dr. H. N. MacCracken. Part I, Religious Poems. 15s [*At Press*]. " "
 CVIII. *Lydgate's Siege of Thebes*, re-edited from the MSS. by Prof. Dr. A. Erdmann. Pt. I, The Text. 15s. 1911
 CIX. *Partonope*, re-edited from its 3 MSS. by Dr. A. T. Böttker. The Texts. 15s. " "
 CX. *Caxton's Mirror of the World*, with all the woodcuts, ed. by O. H. Prior, M.A., Litt.D. 15s. [*At Press*]. 1912
 CXI. *Caxton's History of Jason*, the Text, Part I, ed. by John Manro. 15s. " [*At Press*].

EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY TEXTS PREPARING.

Besides the Texts named as at press on p. 12 of the Early English Text Society's last Announcements, the following Texts are also slowly preparing for the Society:—

ORIGINAL SERIES.

- The Earliest English Prose Psalter, ed. Dr. K. D. Buelbring. Part II.
 The Earliest English Verse Psalter, 3 texts, ed. Rev. R. Harvey, M.A.
 Anglo-Saxon Poems, from the Vercelli MS., re-edited by Prof. I. Gollancz, M.A.
 Anglo-Saxon Glosses to Latin Prayers and Hymns, edited by Dr. F. Holthausen.
 All the Anglo-Saxon Homilies and Lives of Saints not accessible in English editions, including those of the Vercelli MS. &c., edited by Prof. Napier, M.A., Ph.D.
 The English Disciplina Clericalis, Worcester Cathedral MS. 172, ed. Prof. W. H. Hulme, Ph.D.
 The Statutes of Black Roger, Worcester Cathedral MS. 172, ed. Prof. W. H. Hulme, Ph.D.
 The Anglo-Saxon Psalms; all the MSS. in Parallel Texts, ed. Dr. H. Logeman and F. Harsley, B.A.
 Beowulf, a critical Text, &c., edited by a Pupil of the late Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.
 Byrhtferth's Handbooc, ed. by Prof. G. Hempf.
 Early English Confessionals, ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
 The Seven Sages, in the Northern Dialect, from a Cotton MS., edited by Dr. Squires.
 The Master of the Game, a Book of Huntynge for Hen. V. when Prince of Wales, ed. G. A. Beacock, B.A.
 Ailred's Rule of Nuns, &c., edited from the Vernon MS., by the Rev. Canon H. R. Bramley, M.A.
 A Lapidary, from Lord Tollemache's MS., &c., edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
 Early English Deeds and Documents, from unique MSS., ed. Dr. Lorenz Morsbach.
 Gilbert Banastre's Poems, and other Boecaccio englishings, ed. by Prof. Dr. Max Forster.
 Lanfranc's Chirurgie, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker, Part II.
 William of Nassington's Mirror of Life, from Jn. of Waldby, edited by J. A. Herbert, M.A.
 Early Canterbury Wills, edited by William Cowper, B.A., and J. Meadows Cowper.
 Alliterative Prophecies, edited from the MSS. by Prof. Brandl, Ph.D.
 Miscellaneous Alliterative Poems, edited from the MSS. by Dr. L. Morsbach.
 Bird and Beast Poems, a collection from MSS., edited by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 Seire Mori, &c., from the Lichfield MS. 16, ed. Mrs. L. Grindon, LL.A., and Mrs. R. Taylor.
 Nicholas Trivet's French Chronicle, from Sir A. Acland-Hood's unique MS., ed. by F. W. Clarke, M.A.
 Early English Homilies in Harl. 2276, &c., c. 1400, ed. J. Friedländer.
 Extracts from the Registers of Boughton, ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq.
 The Diary of Prior Moore of Worcester, A.D. 1518-35, from the unique MS., ed. Henry Littlehales, Esq.
 The Pore Caitif, from its MSS., by Mr. Peake.
 Trevisa's English Vegetius on the Art of War, MS. 30 Magd. Coll. Oxf., ed. L. C. Wharton, M.A.
 Poems attributed to Richard Maydenstone, from MS. Rawl. A 389, edited by Dr. W. Heuser.
 Knighthood and Battle, a verse-Vegetius from a Pembroke Coll. MS., Camb., ed. Dr. R. Dyboski.
 Othea and Hector, 3 texts—2 from MSS., 1 from Wyer's print, edited by Hy. N. MacCracken, Ph.D.
 Minor Poems of the Vernon MS. Part III. Introduction and Glossary by H. Hartley, M.A.
 Sir David Lyndesay's Works. Part VI. and last. Edited by the Rev. Wm. Bayne, M.A. [At Press.
 Prayers and Devotions, from the unique MS. Cotton Titus C. 19, ed. Hy. Littlehales Esq. [Copied.

EXTRA SERIES.

- Bp. Fisher's English Works, Pt. II., with his Life and Letters, ed. Rev. Ronald Bayne, B.A. [At Press.
 Sir Tristrem, from the unique Auchinleck MS., edited by George F. Black.
 De Guilleville's Pilgrimage of the Sowle, edited by Mr. Hans Koestner.
 Vicary's Anatomie, 1548, from the unique MS. copy by George Jeans, edited by F. J. & Percy Furnivall.
 Vicary's Anatomie, 1548, ed. 1577, edited by F. J. & Percy Furnivall. Part II.
 A Compilation of Surgerye, from H. de Mandeville and Lanfrank, A.D. 1392, ed. Dr. J. F. Payne.
 William Staunton's St. Patriek's Purgatory, &c., ed. Mr. G. P. Krapp, U.S.A.
 Trevisa's Bartholomæus de Proprietatibus Rerum, re-edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
 Bullein's Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence, 1564, 1573, 1578. Ed. A. H. and M. Bullen. Part II.
 The Romance of Boetus and Sidrae, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 The Romance of Claridus, and Sir Amadas, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 Sir Degrevant, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. Luick.
 Robert of Brunne's Chronicle of England, from the Inner Temple MS., ed. by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph. D.
 Maundeville's Voiage and Travaile, re-edited from the Cotton MS. Titus C. 16, &c. (Editor wanted.)
 Avowynge of Arthur, re-edited from the unique Ireland MS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 Guy of Warwick, Copland's version, edited by a pupil of the late Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.
 Awdelay's Poems, re-edited from the unique MS. Douce 302, by Prof. Dr. E. Wülfing.
 The Wyse Chylde and other early Treatises on Education, Northwich School, Harl. 2099, &c., ed. G. Collar, B.A.
 Gaxton's Dictes and Sayengis of Philosophirs, 1477, with Lord Tollemache's MS. version, ed. S. I. Butler, Esq.
 Lydgate's Lyfe of oure Lady, ed. by Prof. Georg Fiedler, Ph.D.
 Lydgate's Life of St. Edmund, edited from the MSS. by Dr. Axel Erdmann.
 Richard Coer de Lion, re-edited from Harl. MS. 4690, by Prof. Hausknecht, Ph.D.
 The Romance of Athelstan, re-edited by a pupil of the late Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D.

EXTRA SERIES (continued).

- The Romance of Sir Degare, re-edited by Dr. Breul.
 The Gospel of Nichodemus, edited by Ernest Riedel.
 Mulcaster's Positions 1581, and *Elementarie* 1582, ed. Dr. Th. Klaher, Dresden.
 Walton's verse *Boethius de Consolatione*, edited by Dr. H. C. Schummer.
 Sir Landeval and Sir Launfal, edited by Dr. Zimmermann.
 Rolland's Seven Sages, the Scottish version of 1560, edited by George F. Black.
 Burch's Cato, re-edited from all the MSS. by Prof. Dr. Max Förster.
 Wynkyn de Worde's English and French Phrase-book, etc., edited by Hermann Oelsner, Ph.D.
 Extracts from the Rochester Diocesan Registers, ed. Hy. Littlehales.
 The Coventry Plays, re-edited from the unique MS. by Dr. Matthews.
 Walter Hylton's Ladder of Perfection, re-edited from the MSS. by Miss K. B. Loeck.

Among the MSS. and old books which need copying or re-editing, are :—

ORIGINAL SERIES.

- English Inventories and other MSS. in Canterbury Cathedral (5th Report, Hist. MSS. Com.).
 Maumetrie, from Lord Tollemache's MS.
 The Romance of Troy. Harl. 525, Addit. Br. Mus.
 Biblical MS., Corpus Camb. 434 (ab. 1375).
 Hampole's unprinted Works.
pe Clowde of Unknowyng, from Harl. MSS. 2373, 959.
 Bibl. Rex. 17 C 26, &c. Univ. Coll. Oxf. 14.
 A Lanterne of Liȝt, from Harl. MS. 2324.
 Soule-hele, from the Vernon MS.
 Boethius de Consol.; Pilgrim, 1426, &c. &c.
 Early Treatises on Music: *Descant, the Gamme, &c.*
 Skelton's englishing of *Diodorus Siculus*.
 Boethius, in prose, MS. Auct. F. 3. 5, Bodley.
 Penitential Psalms, by Rd. Maydenstoon, Brampton, &c. (Rawlinson, A. 389. Douce 232, &c.).
 Documents from the early Registers of the Bishops of all Dioceses in Great Britain.
 Ordinances and Documents of the City of Worcester.
 T. Breus's Passion of Christ, 1422. Harl. 2338.
 Jn. Crophill or Crephill's Tracts, Harl. 1735.
Memoriale Credencium, &c., Harl. 2398.
 Early English Verse Lives of Saints, Standard Collection, from the Harl. MS.
 Early Norwich Wills.
- Book for Recluses, Harl. 2372.
 Lollard Theological Treatises, Harl. 2343, 2330, &c.
 H. Selby's Northern Ethical Tract, Harl. 2388, art. 20.
 Supplementary Early English Lives of Saints.
 Select Prose Treatises from the Vernon MS.
 Lyrical Poems from the Fairfax MS. 16, &c.
 Prose Life of St. Audry, A. D. 1595, Corp. Oxf. 120.
 English Miscellanies from MSS., Corp. Oxford.
 Miscellanies from Oxford College MSS.
Disce Mori, Jesus Coll. Oxf. 39; Bodl. Laud 99.
Mirror of the blessed liȝt of Ihesu Crist. MSS. of Sir Hy. Iugilby, Bart., Lord Aldenham, Univ. Coll. Oxf. 123, &c.
Poem on Virtues and Vices, &c., Harl. 2260.
Maunderlyle's Legend of Gwydo, Queen's, Oxf. 383.
 Book of Warrants of Edw. VI., &c., New Coll. Oxf. 328.
 Adam Loutfut's Heraldic Tracts, Harl. 6149-50.
 Rules for Gunpowder and Ordnance, Harl. 6355.
 John Watton's enlight *Speculum Christiani*, Corpus, Oxf. 155, Laud G. 12, Thoresby 530, Harl. 2250, art. 20.
 Verse and Prose in Harl. MS. 4012.
 Nicholas of Hereford's English Bible.
 The Prickyng of Love, Harl. 2254, Vernon, &c.
 More Early English Wills from the Probate Registry at Somerset House.

EXTRA SERIES.

- Erle of Tolous. Ypotis.
 Sir Eglamoure. Alexander.
 Orfeo (Digby, 86).
 Dialogues between the Soul and Body.
 Barlaam and Josaphat.
 Amis and Amiloun.
 Sir Generides, from Lord Tollemache's MS.
 The Troy-Book fragments once caid Barbour's, in the Camb. Univ. Library and Douce MSS.
 Poems of Charles, Duke of Orleans.
 Carols and Songs.
 Songs and Ballads, Ashmole MS. 48.
- Octavian.
 Libeaus Desconus.
 Ywain and Gawain. Sir Isumbras.
 Pilgrimage to Jerusalem, Queen's Coll. Oxf. 357.
 Other Pilgrimages to Jerusalem, Harl. 2332, &c.
 Horæ, Penitential Psalms, &c., Queen's Coll. Oxf. 207.
 St. Brandan's Confession, Queen's Coll. Oxf. 210.
 Scotch Heraldry Tracts, copy of Caxton's Book of Chivalry, &c., Queen's Coll. Oxford 161.
 Stevyn Scrope's Doctryne and Wysedome of the Auncyent Philosophers, A. D. 1450, Harl. 2266.

The Subscription to the Society, which constitutes membership, is £1 ls. a year for the ORIGINAL SERIES, and £1 ls. for the EXTRA SERIES, due in advance on the 1st of JANUARY, and should be paid by Cheque, Postal Order, or Money-Order, cross 'Union of London and Smiths Bank,' to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 67, Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N. Members who want their Texts posted to them must add to their prepaid Subscriptions 1s. for the Original Series, and 1s. for the Extra Series, yearly. The Society's Texts are also sold separately at the prices put after them in the Lists; but Members can get back-Texts at one-third less than the List-prices by sending the cash for them in advance to the Hon. Secretary.

Foreign Subscriptions can be paid, and the Society's Texts delivered, through Asher & Co., 17, Behrenstrasse, Berlin.

ORIGINAL SERIES.

The Publications for 1911 (one guinea) were:—

141. Earth upon Earth, all the known texts, ed., with an Introduction, by Miss Hilda Murray, M.A. 10s.
 142. The English Register of Godstow Nunnery, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part III. 10s.
 143. The Wars of Alexander the Great, Thornton MS., ed. J. S. Westlake, M.A. [At Press.] 10s.

The Publications for 1912 (one guinea) are:—

144. The English Register of Osney Abbey, by Oxford, ed. by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part II. 10s.
 145. The Northern Passion, four parallel texts and the French original, edited from the MSS. by Frances A. Foster. The Parallel Texts, Part I. 15s.

The Publications for 1913 (one guinea) are:—

146. The Coventry Leet-Book, ed. from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dormer Harris. Introduction, Indexes, &c., Part IV. 10s.
 147. The Northern Passion, the French Text, Variants and Fragments, &c., ed. Miss F. A. Foster. Part II. [At Press.]

[Together with an enlarged Reprint of No. 26, originally edited by the Rev. G. G. Perry, Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse. (At Press.)]

The Publications for 1914 will be chosen from:—

- An Alphabet of Tales, in Northern English, from the Latin, ed. Mrs. M. M. Banks. Part III.
 Twenty-six Political and other Poems from Digby MS. 102, &c., edited by Dr. J. Kail. Part II.
 The Brut, or The Chronicles of England, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. F. Brie. Part III. Notes, &c.
 The Laud Troy-Book, edited from the unique MS. Laud 595, by Dr. J. Ernest Wülging. Part III.
 The Old-English Rule of Bp. Chrodegang, and the Capitula of Bp. Theodulf, ed. Prof. Napier, Ph.D. [At Press]
 Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne (1303), and its French original. Part III.
 The Alliterative Siege of Jerusalem, edited by Prof. E. Kölbng, Ph.D., and Prof. Kaluza, Ph.D. [At Press]
 Alain Chartier's Quadrilogue, english, edited from the unique MS. by Prof. J. W. H. Atkins, M.A.
 Jacob's Well, edited from the unique Salisbury Cathedral MS. by Dr. A. Brandeis. Part II.
 Vices and Virtues, from the unique MS., ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Prof. Dr. F. Holthausen, Part II. [At Press].
 The Exeter Book (Anglo-Saxon Poems), re-ed. from the unique MS., by Prof. Gollancz, Litt.D. Part II. [At Press]
 North-English Metrical Homilies, from Ashmole MS. 42 &c., ed. G. H. Geroald, D.Litt.
 Vegetius on the Art of War, edited from the MSS. by L. C. Wharton, M.A.
 Shirley's Book of Gode Maners, edited from the unique MS. by Hermann Oelsner, Ph.D.
 Verse and Prose from the Harl. MS. 2253, re-ed. by Miss Hilda Murray, M.A., of the Royal Holloway College.
 Early Lincoln Wills and Documents from the Bishops' Registers, &c., ed. by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark.
 A Stanzaic Exposition of the Feasts of the Church and the Life of Christ based on the *Legenda Aurea*, ed. from the MSS. Harl. 3909, Harl. 2250, and Addit. 38666, by Miss F. A. Foster. [At Press].
 The Earliest English Apocalypse with a Commentary, edited by Dr. Anna C. Paus.
 Dives and Pauper, ed. from the MSS. by Mr. Richardson, M.A.
 A Fifteenth-Century Courtesy Book and Two Franciscan Rules, edited by R. W. Chambers, M.A., Litt.D., and W. W. Seton, M.A. [At Press].

EXTRA SERIES.

The Publications for 1911 (one guinea) were:—

- CVIII. Lydgate's Siege of Thebes, re-edited from the MSS. by Prof. Dr. A. Erdmann. Part I, The Text. 15s.
 CIX. Partonope, re-edited from its 3 MSS. by Dr. A. T. Böttker. The Texts. 15s.

The Publications for 1912 (one guinea) are:—

- CX. Caxton's Mirror of the World, with all the Woodcuts, edited by O. H. Prior, M.A. 15s.
 CXI. Saxton's History of Jason, edited by John Munro. Part I, the Text. 15s.

The Publications for 1913 (one guinea) are:—

- CXII. Lovelich's Romance of Merlin, edited from the unique MS. by Prof. Dr. E. A. Kock. Part II. 15s.
 CXIII. Poems by Sir John Salusbury, Robert Chester, and others, from Christ Church MS. 184, ed. by Dr. Carleton Brown. [At Press.]

The Publications for 1914 will be chosen from:—

- De Medicina, a 12th-century Englishing, re-edited by Prof. Joseph Delcourt. [At Press].
 Lydgate's Minor Poems, ed. Dr. H. N. MacCracken. Part II, Secular Poems. [At Press].
 Lydgate's Troy Book, ed. by Dr. Hy. Bergen. Part IV, Introduction, Notes, &c. [At Press].
 Lydgate's Dance of Death, edited from the MSS. by Miss Florence Waldren.
 Lydgate's Siege of Thebes, re-edited from the MSS. by Prof. Dr. A. Erdmann. Part II, Notes, &c.
 The Owl and Nightingale, 2 Texts parallel, ed. G. F. H. Sykes, Esq. [At Press].
 The Court of Sapience, once thought Lydgate's, edited by Dr. Jaeger.
 Mirk's Festial, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Erbe. Part II.
 William of Shoreham's Poems, re-edited by Dr. M. Konrath. Part II.
 Winner and Waster, &c., two Alliterative Poems, re-edited by Prof. I. Gollancz, Litt.D.
 Melusine, the prose Romance, from the unique MS., ab. 1500, ed. A. K. Donald, B.A. Part II. [At Press].
 Secreta Secretorum: three prose Englishings, ab. 1440, ed. R. Steele, B.A. Part II. [At Press].
 The Craft of Nombrynge, the earliest English Treatise on Arithmetic, ed. R. Steele, B.A.
 The Book of the Foundation of St. Bartholomew's Hospital, London, MS. ab. 1425, ed. Dr. Norman Moore. [Scr.]
 The Chester Plays, Part II., re-edited by Dr. Matthews. [At Press].
 Lichfield Gilds, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall: Introduction by Prof. E. C. K. Gomer. [Text done]
 John Hart's Orthographie, from his unique MS. 1551, and his black-letter text, 1569, ed. Prof. Otto Jespersen, Ph.D.
 John Hart's Methode to teach Reading, 1570, ed. Prof. Otto Jespersen, Ph.D.
 The Three Kings' Sons, Part II, French collation, Introduction, &c., by Dr. L. Kellner.
 The Ancrens Riwele, edited from its five MSS., by the late Prof. E. Kölbng, Ph.D., and Dr. Thünmler.
 Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail, Part VI.
 The Avnturs of Arthur, 2 Texts from the 3 MSS., edited by Wilhelm Wolf.
 Caxton's Book of the Order of Chyualry, edited by Miss Alice H. Davies.
 Early English Fabliaux, edited by Prof. George H. McKnight, Ph.D.
 Ragman Roll, The Chaunce of the Dyse, Ballads, Complaints, and other Pieces, from MS. Fairfax 16, edited by Prof. Edith Morley.
 Piers Plowman, the A Text, re-edited from the MSS. by R. W. Chambers, M.A., Litt.D., and J. H. G. Grattan, M.A. [At Press].
 Caxton's Prologues, ed. by Henry Wheatley, Litt.D.

LONDON: KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRUBNER & CO., LTD.,
 BROADWAY HOUSE, LUDGATE HILL, E.C.
 AND HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIV. PRESS, AMEN CORNER, E.C.
 BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 17, BEHRENSTRASSE.

PR Early English Text
1119 Society
A2 [Publications]
no.143 Original series

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH

